

# Bordism & Topological Field Theory

*Claudia Scheimbauer*

Wintersemester 2023

**Tutor:**  
Anja Švraka

**Notes created by:**  
Luca Ipsale  
William Luciani  
Andrea Sittoni  
Üzeyir Saçıkay  
Jacob Skarby

*The mathematical facts worthy of being studied  
are those which, by their analogy with other facts,  
are capable of leading us to the knowledge of a mathematical law  
just as experimental facts lead us to the knowledge of a physical law.  
They reveal the kinship between other facts, long known,  
but wrongly believed to be strangers to one another.*

*–H. Poincaré*

# For the reader

These are the lecture notes of the course “*Bordism and Topological Field Theory*” held by Prof. Dr. Claudia Scheimbauer (scheimbauer@ma.tum.de) during the Wintersemester 2023/2024 at the *Technische Universität München*. The tutorial sessions are held by Anja Švraka (svr@ma.tum.de). The notes are typed by Luca Ipsale (luca.ipsale@campus.lmu.de), William Luciani (w.luciani@campus.lmu.de), Andrea Sittoni (sittoniandrea@gmail.com) and Üzeyir Saçıkay (uzeyirsacikay@gmail.com). Exercises are also implemented in the notes by Jacob Skarby (jacob.skarby@tum.de). If you find errors or have suggestions of any kind, please write us an e-mail.

 These notes have not been proofread by Prof. Scheimbauer, use at your own risk.

## Notational Conventions

**Notation.** Throughout these notes we will abuse notation indicating a collection with some structure on it just by writing down the collection, e.g. denoting a monoid  $(M, \cdot)$  by  $M$ , a metric space  $(X, d)$  by  $X$  etc...

**Notation.** By ' $n$ -manifold' and ' $n$ -bordism', we mean respectively a manifold of dimension  $n$  and bordism a bordism of dimension  $n$ .

**Notation.** We often denote equivalence classes just with a representative thereof.

**Notation** ( $\star$ ). We use the symbol ' $\star$ ' at the end of titles of sections, definitions or theorems that depart from the content of the class and deepen some aspects of topics we did not cover in the lectures.

They are often sketchy. Their aim is to convey the intuition behind exciting topics in the field of TFTs or neighbouring ones (and often convince you that  $\infty$ -categories are cool and useful<sup>1</sup>). They have been written by Andrea Sittoni. Please send corrections, suggestions and comments.

In this kind of sections we have the following conventions.

**Notation.** We denote the  $(\infty, 1)$ -category of spaces/ $\infty$ -groupoids both with  $\mathcal{S}$ ,  $\text{Grpd}_\infty$  and with  $\infty\text{-Grpd}$ .  $\mathcal{S}$  stands for Spaces. This is motivated by the homotopy hypothesis, see 4.6.27.

**Notation.** When there is no ambiguity, we denote  $(\infty, 1)$ -categories as  $\infty$ -categories. We denote the  $(\infty, 2)$ -category of all  $(\infty, 1)$ -categories with  $\text{Cat}_\infty$  or  $\infty\text{-Cat}$ .

## Prerequisites

The notes strive to be as self-contained as possible. We do assume however knowledge of linear algebra, basic notions from analysis, e.g. smoothness, and basic notions of topology, e.g. paracompactness. Knowledge of algebraic topology is helpful but not necessary to understand the most important parts.

## Acknowledgements

Apart from Prof. Scheimbauer's lectures and the cited references, we often got inspiration from the nLab (<https://ncatlab.org/nlab/show/HomePage>) and from notes on algebraic topology by Prof. Land (available on <https://www.mathematik.uni-muenchen.de/~gritscha/TOP1-23.php>). We also thank Kaya Arro for helpful comments on the content of 6.6.1.

---

<sup>1</sup>Regarding this, we are very happy and excited to communicate that the next semester (SoSe2024) there will be a seminar regarding simplicial homotopy theory and  $\infty$ -categories at LMU. If you are interested or have any questions regarding this, contact Prof. Land ([Markus.land@math.lmu.de](mailto:Markus.land@math.lmu.de)) and check his website.

# Contents

<b>1</b>	<b>Why should you care? An informal introduction</b>	<b>1</b>
1.1	QFT . . . . .	1
1.2	Topology . . . . .	4
<b>I</b>	<b>Classical cobordism theory</b>	<b>8</b>
<b>2</b>	<b>Manifolds and bordisms</b>	<b>9</b>
2.1	What are manifolds? . . . . .	9
2.2	What is a bordism? . . . . .	14
2.3	Different definitions of bordisms . . . . .	17
2.4	Tangential Structures . . . . .	19
2.4.1	Orientations and the tangent bundle . . . . .	19
2.4.2	Framings . . . . .	21
2.5	Classifications of 1- and 2-manifolds . . . . .	22
2.5.1	Classification of 1-manifolds . . . . .	22
2.5.2	Classification of 2-manifolds with boundary . . . . .	23
2.5.3	Introduction to Morse Theory . . . . .	23
<b>3</b>	<b>Cobordism groups</b>	<b>31</b>
3.1	The 0-th Cobordism Group, $\Omega_0$ . . . . .	32
3.1.1	The 1st cobordism group, $\Omega_1$ . . . . .	34
3.2	The 2nd cobordism group, $\Omega_2$ . . . . .	34
3.3	More on cobordism groups . . . . .	35
3.4	Cobordism theory and stable homotopy theory ✈ . . . . .	36
3.4.1	Cobordism groups and the sphere spectrum ✈ . . . . .	37
<b>II</b>	<b>Topological field theories</b>	<b>39</b>
	<b>Preamble: a modern perspective on cobordisms</b>	<b>40</b>
<b>4</b>	<b>A summary of category theory</b>	<b>42</b>
4.1	Category theory: basic definitions . . . . .	42
4.2	Natural transformations . . . . .	45
4.3	Equivalence of categories ✈ . . . . .	48
4.4	Adjunction ✈ . . . . .	50
4.5	Higher categories ✈ . . . . .	51
4.6	Monoidal categories . . . . .	53

4.6.1	Cartesian monoidal categories ✈	56
4.6.2	Noncartesian monoidal categories ✈	57
4.6.3	Enriched categories ✈	59
4.6.4	Grothendieck's Homotopy Hypothesis and $\infty$ -categories ✈	62
4.7	Objects internal to a monoidal category	65
4.8	Symmetric monoidal categories	66
4.8.1	Homotopy coherent monoid objects: $E_n$ -algebras ✈	72
4.8.2	Interlude on bicategories ✈	79
<b>5</b>	<b>The cobordism category</b>	<b>85</b>
5.1	Definition of topological field theories	87
5.1.1	Invertible field theories and stable homotopy theory ✈	91
5.1.2	Dualizability in the context of topological field theories	93
5.1.3	Dualizability in higher categories ✈	97
<b>6</b>	<b>Classification of topological field theories</b>	<b>99</b>
6.1	Classification of 1d-TFTs	100
6.2	Classification of 2d-TFTs	105
6.3	Variants of TFTs	111
6.4	3d TFTs	113
6.4.1	The Yang-Baxter equation	114
6.4.2	The braid group and the Braid category	116
6.4.3	Expanding the Braid category: the Tangle category	119
6.4.4	Interlude on knots, links and the Jones polynomial	122
6.4.5	Making $A - \text{Mod}^{f.d.}$ into a ribbon category	129
6.5	Outlook: How to get a 3D TFT?	133
6.5.1	From knots to 3 manifolds: surgery	133
6.6	Rough sketch of the cobordism hypothesis and extended topological field theories ✈	137
6.6.1	Alternative formulation of the cobordism hypothesis of TFTs ✈	139
<b>A</b>	<b>Infinity categories ✈</b>	<b>142</b>
A.1	Homotopy co/limits ✈	142
<b>B</b>	<b>What are spectra? ✈</b>	<b>146</b>
B.1	Spectra and higher algebra ✈	150
<b>III</b>	<b>Hints and solutions to exercises</b>	<b>152</b>

# Chapter 1

## Why should you care? An informal introduction

There are two ways one can see topological field theories:

1. As a way to make (some<sup>1</sup>) quantum field theories more mathematically rigorous
2. As a way to refine bordism invariants

We now sketch how these two approaches work.

### 1.1 QFT

Physics is very interesting: There are many, many interesting theorems. Unfortunately, there are no definitions.

---

David Kazhdan

Start with a (smooth) manifold  $M$  and, generally, some extra structure. For example:

- $M^4 = \mathbb{R}^4$  with a metric with signature  $(+, +, +, -)$ , so that we can distinguish a strictly spatial part and a temporal part ( $\mathbb{R}^4 = \mathbb{R}^3_{space} \times \mathbb{R}^1_{time}$ ). This is called *Minkowski Spacetime* and is particularly important in QFT being the geometric foundation of Special Relativity,
- $M^3 = \mathbb{R}^3$  with the Euclidean metric,
- $M^2$  with a conformal structure,
- $M^{1,1}$  as an “Elliptic Fibration”, something which *locally* looks like  $(S^1 \times S^1) \times something$ . These things are useful in areas with high-sounding names such as “M-Theory” or, more generically, “String Theory”.

However, in general, these manifolds must be thought of with other structures, like connections, bundles...

Now we can “define” a Quantum Field Theory on  $M$  via a list of ingredients:

---

<sup>1</sup>Sadly, TFTs cannot axiomatize many quantum field theories that are particularly useful in physics, e.g. the quantum field theory behind the standard model.

1. **Fields.** The space of fields  $\mathcal{F}$ , associated usually to a bundle  $E \xrightarrow{p} M$ , is defined as sections<sup>2</sup> of  $E$  over  $M$ . In the case the bundle is trivial ( $E \cong M \times X$ ), then  $\mathcal{F} = \Gamma(M, E) = \text{Maps}(M \rightarrow X)$ . But what mathematical object are we dealing with? What do we mean by “space” here? Is it a set, a topological space, a category, a scheme, a stack...?

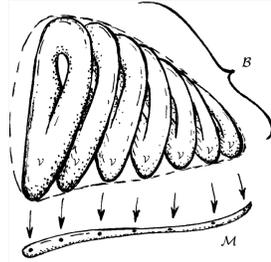


Fig. 15.2 A bundle  $B$ , with base space  $M$  and fibre  $\mathcal{V}$  may be thought of as constituted as an ‘ $M$ ’s worth of  $\mathcal{V}$ ’s. The canonical projection from  $B$  down to  $M$  may be viewed as the collapsing of each fibre  $\mathcal{V}$  down to a single point.

2. **Partition Function.** We need a measure against which we can compute “correlation functions” of fields  $\psi_1, \psi_2$  i.e. the “likelihood of  $\psi_1$  given  $\psi_2$ ”. We thus define a Partition Function

$$Z(M) = \int_{\psi \in \mathcal{F}} e^{iS(\psi)} \mathcal{D}\psi,$$

with

$$S(\psi) = \int_M \mathcal{L}(\psi),$$

called the Action Functional. Generally  $\mathcal{L}$  is a polynomial in the fields and it has derivatives. From the Partition Function one can obtain the correlation functions. Although physicists use this formula all the time, formally there is a problem: the measure  $\mathcal{D}\psi$  is, in most cases, ill defined.



3. **Quantization.** Often QFT arises from “quantizing” something classical. But what does this mean? And in what way does this thing behave when changing input?

Physicists use all sorts of techniques (Feynman Diagrams, renormalization...) to make sense of undefined measures and divergences of all kinds emerging from calculations, dealing with things like  $\infty - \infty$  or  $\infty/\infty$  and obtaining finite and testable results.

<sup>2</sup>A section of a bundle  $E \xrightarrow{p} M$  is a map (in this context, smooth)  $s : M \rightarrow E$  such that  $p \circ s = id_M$ .

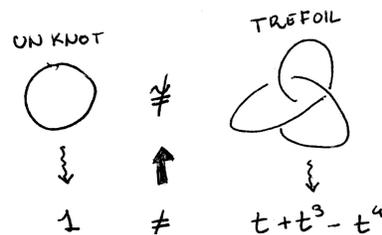
This black box that physicists have (successfully) developed frustrates mathematicians because they do not understand why it works! Therefore, axiomatizations have been developed exploiting new tools from geometry, algebra and topology to develop a formal and rigorous framework<sup>3</sup>.

The Partition Function  $Z$  behaves well when “smoothly” changing the metric and is (in most cases) independent of most extra data of the manifold, so  $Z(M)$  depends only on the smooth manifold and as such is purely topological!

If someone is into mathematics for the money or the prestige<sup>4</sup>, the field of topological field theories is the one to specialize in:

- René Thom, the mathematician who laid the foundation of cobordism theory<sup>5</sup> in his PhD thesis, received the Fields Medal for this.
- Shiing-Shen Chern and Jim Simons discovered geometric invariants of 3-dimensional Riemannian manifolds called (classical) Chern-Simons invariants. They are a generalization of the total geodesic curvature, which is in turn a generalization of the curvature of a plane curve that = 0 when the curve is a geodesic. Such invariants are the basic building blocks Witten used to define the earliest example we have of a TFT: 3d Chern-Simons theory<sup>6</sup>. Simons then went on to found an incredibly successful hedge fund and became a billionaire. Chern continued to do groundbreaking work in differential geometry and topology; so much that some years ago the International Congress of Mathematicians named a prize after him: the Chern Medal.
- Edward Witten received his Fields medal mainly because he found a link between 3d-TFTs, in particular Chern-Simons theory, and knot theory, in particular with the Jones polynomial. See [Wit89] for details.

The Jones polynomial is a topological invariant of a knot, meaning that you can assign to each knot a Jones Polynomial in such a way that if two Knots have different polynomials, then they must be different.



What the heck do TFTs and knots have in common?! There is actually a deep connection between the two. When writing his paper, Witten drew several pictures like the following:

<sup>3</sup>More specifically to the path integral, see [CR18, 2.1] for an introduction on how topological field theories can be seen as a way to axiomatize some properties of the path integral as a tool to compute correlation functions.

<sup>4</sup>If not already sufficiently clear, we explicitly state that this is a joke.

<sup>5</sup>Which is at the root of TFTs: TFTs can be seen as a refinement of his work.

<sup>6</sup>One can find more on this in [Fre08]

Quantum Field Theory and the Jones Polynomial

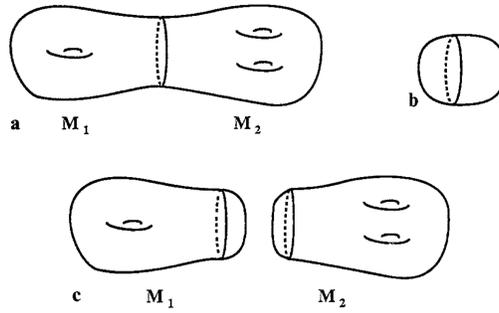


Fig. 5a–c. In a is sketched a three manifold  $M$  which is the connected sum of two pieces  $M_1$  and  $M_2$ , joined along a sphere  $S^2$ . Similarly, a three sphere  $S^3$  can be cut along its equator, as in b. Cutting both  $M$  and  $S^3$  as indicated in a and b, the pieces can be rearranged into the disconnected sum of  $M_1$  and  $M_2$ , as in c

Two mathematicians, Segal and Atiyah, recognized a hidden symmetric monoidal functor and pinned down Witten’s intuitions rigorously, thereby axiomatizing TQFTs (and CFTs).

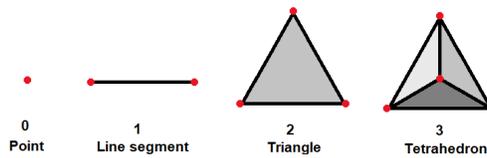
## 1.2 Topology

Topology is the science of fundamental patterns and structural relationships of event constellations.

Fuller

The ideas behind cobordisms were developed already by Poincaré together with homology (and their group structure was discovered and investigated by Emmy Noether) but a proper definition was established by Pontryagin and Thom in the 20<sup>th</sup> century.

The strategy in general in (algebraic) topology is to probe a topological space by mapping into it, a way of viewing things very reminiscent of the Yoneda Lemma. In the case of (singular) homology, we map simplices into the space of interest  $S$ . These maps are indexed by the dimension of the simplex as in the following figure. We want to construct an



algebraic structure around these maps  $\sigma^{(n)} : \Delta^n \rightarrow S$  and so we choose a set of coefficients, say  $\mathbb{R}$ , and construct the set of “formal (finite) sums” of  $n$ -simplices as

$$\sum a_i \sigma_i^{(n)},$$

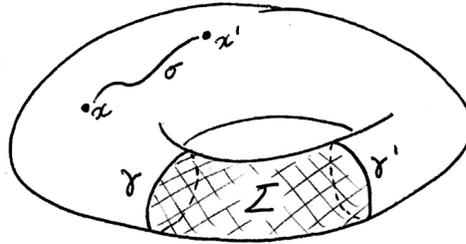
with  $a_i \in \mathbb{R}$  and call this set  $C_n(S)$ . This is now an  $\mathbb{R}$ -Vector Space generated by the simplices. On the set of simplices we can introduce a map  $\partial$ , often called the differential or boundary, that takes each simplex to the alternating sum of the  $n - 1$  simplices that make up its boundary:

$$\partial \sigma^{(n)} := \sum_{i=0}^n (-1)^i \sigma^{(n)}|_{i^{\text{th-boundary}}},$$

and then extend it linearly to  $C_n(S)$ . Calling  $\partial_n := \partial|_{C_n(S)}$ , we have  $\partial_n : C_n(S) \rightarrow C_{n-1}(S)$  and it can also be shown that  $\partial_n \circ \partial_{n+1} = 0$ , a property which is often simply written as  $\partial^2 = 0$ . This defines a chain complex structure. Given this property of  $\partial$ , note that  $\text{im}(\partial_{n+1}) \subset \ker(\partial_n)$  and therefore, we can define the  $n^{\text{th}}$  homology of  $S$  as

$$H_n(S) = \left\{ c^{(n)} : \partial_n c^{(n)} = 0 \right\} / \left\{ f^{(n)} : f^{(n)} = \partial_{n+1}(f'^{(n+1)}) \right\} = \frac{\ker(\partial_n)}{\text{im}(\partial_{n+1})},$$

and this is a vector space (by construction).



Note that  $x - x' = \partial\sigma$  so  $x$  and  $x'$  define the same element in  $H_0$ , similarly  $\gamma - \gamma' = \partial\Sigma$  so that  $\gamma$  and  $\gamma'$  define the same element in  $H_1$ .

The elements of  $H_1(S)$  and  $H_2(S)$  can be characterized in different ways:

1. The elements of  $H_1(S)$  can be represented by a collection of oriented loops mapped in  $S$ .

$$\amalg S^1 \longrightarrow S$$

2. The elements of  $H_2(S)$  can be represented by a collection of maps from closed oriented surfaces (e.g. genus  $g$ -surfaces) in  $S$ .

$$\amalg \Sigma \longrightarrow S$$

3. Let  $c \in H_1(S)$ , then  $\partial c = 0$ . Now by 1. this is some map  $c : \amalg S^1 \rightarrow S$  which is  $0 \in H_1(S)$  if and only if it extends to a map  $\tilde{c}$  of oriented surfaces in  $S$ , i.e. if there is the map on the bottom right such that the following diagram commutes.

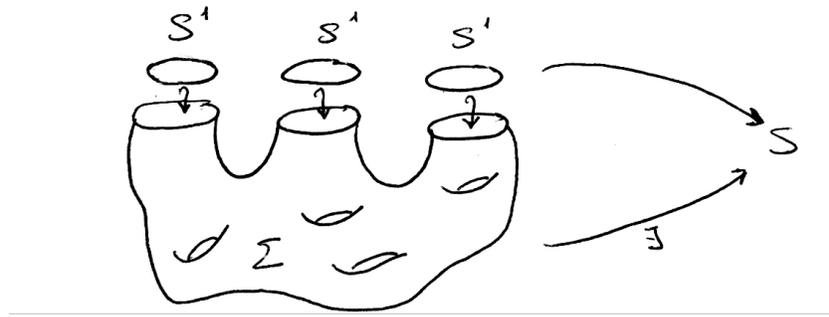
$$\begin{array}{ccc} \amalg S^1 & \xrightarrow{c} & S \\ \downarrow & \searrow & \nearrow \\ \amalg \Sigma & \xrightarrow{\tilde{c}} & S \end{array}$$

A drawing might be helpful:

Can we then construct something like homology but characterized more like this last property? This is exactly the idea of *(co)bordism*:

1. Let  $M^n$  be a  $n$ -dimensional smooth compact manifold generally with boundary. Now, instead of maps from simplices we consider maps

$$M^n \xrightarrow{f} S.$$



2. Instead of the boundary map of simplices we consider something like:

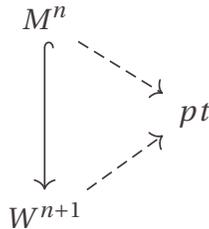
$$\partial(M^n \xrightarrow{f} S) = (\partial M^n \xrightarrow{f|_{\partial M^n}} S),$$

where, if  $\partial M^n = \emptyset$  then define the map to be 0.

3. Let  $H_n^{\text{bord}}(S)$  denote this “homology theory” of degree  $n$  on the space  $S$ . Let  $M^n$  be closed, then  $M^n \xrightarrow{f} S$  is zero in  $H_n^{\text{bord}}(S)$  if and only if the map  $f$  extends to a  $(n + 1)$ -dimensional smooth compact manifold  $W$  such that  $\partial W = M$ .

Using these ideas one obtains something very similar to singular homology even though different, indeed this bordism theory constitutes a generalized homology theory<sup>7</sup>!

In particular, consider the one point space  $S = \{*\} = pt$ . What are elements in  $H_n^{\text{bord}}(pt)$ ? Consider a closed manifold  $M^n$ . This defines a class in  $H_n^{\text{bord}}(pt)$  since  $\partial M^n = \emptyset$ . Now, this is  $0 \in H_n^{\text{bord}}(pt)$  if we can find a compact  $n + 1$  manifold  $W^{n+1}$  and maps into  $pt$  such that the following diagram commutes

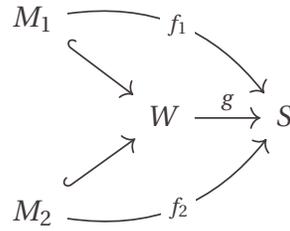


however the maps into  $pt$  are trivial and carry no extra information. Now, “surely” not all closed manifolds are a boundary of compact manifold! And so we can be sure that, in general,  $H_n^{\text{bord}}(pt) \neq 0$  for  $n > 0$ .

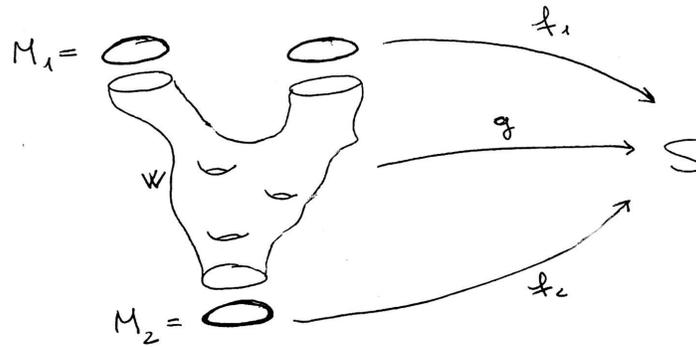
But when do two  $n$ -manifolds represent the same class in  $H_n^{\text{bord}}(S)$ ? In the case of  $S = pt$ , they should be the boundary of the same manifold. In general, we require also that the maps into  $S$  extend to the  $n + 1$  manifold, i.e. let  $M_1$  and  $M_2$  be closed  $n$  manifolds, with maps  $M_1 \xrightarrow{f_1} S$  and  $M_2 \xrightarrow{f_2} S$ , then they represent the same element in  $H_n^{\text{bord}}(S)$  if and only if there exists a compact  $n + 1$  manifold with boundary  $W$  with a map  $W \xrightarrow{g} S$  with the

<sup>7</sup>There exist a list of axioms called *Eilenberg–Steenrod axioms* that is used to define what a homology theory is since it may come in different flavours. A generalized homology theory is a theory that has every property required but one, generally (as in the case of Bordism as seen below) that one is the *dimension axiom*.

property that  $\partial W = M_1 \amalg M_2$  and such that it makes the following diagram commute



Pictorially We then say that  $M_1$  and  $M_2$  are *cobordant* and  $W$  is called a *bordism* from  $M_1$



to  $M_2$ .

Restricting to  $S = pt$  allows us to define the *Cobordism Group*

$$\Omega_n = H_n^{\text{bord}}(pt) = \left\{ \text{Closed } n \text{ manifold} \right\} / \left\{ (n+1) \text{ dimensional bordisms} \right\}.$$

But are all these notions are actually useful? Well, classifying manifolds up to diffeomorphism is hard: dimension 0, 1 and 2 can be done without too much trouble but already in dimension 3 things get complicated (think of the Poincaré Conjecture!)... so this classification can be done (more easily) up to bordism!

# **Part I**

## **Classical cobordism theory**

# Chapter 2

## Manifolds and bordisms

### 2.1 What are manifolds?

Before venturing into a definition of cobordism, let us recall some useful definitions. This section mainly relies on [Lee12] and [Hir76].

**Definition 2.1.1** (*Topological Manifold*). A topological manifold of dimension  $n$  is a paracompact Hausdorff topological space  $X$  such that every point  $x \in X$  has an open neighborhood  $U$  which is homeomorphic to an open set<sup>1</sup> in  $\mathbb{R}^n$ . The latter property means that for each  $x \in X$  there exist:

- an open subset  $U \subseteq X$  containing  $x$ , i.e. an open neighbourhood of  $x$ ,
- a corresponding open subset  $\tilde{U} \in \mathbb{R}^n$ ,
- a homeomorphism  $\phi_U : U \rightarrow \tilde{U} = \phi(U)$  called coordinate chart, or just chart (see Fig. 2.1).

If  $(U, \phi), (V, \psi)$  are two coordinate charts of a topological manifold  $X$  and  $U \cap V \neq \emptyset$ , then  $\psi \circ \phi^{-1} : \phi(U \cap V) \rightarrow \psi(U \cap V)$  is a transition function from  $\phi$  to  $\psi$  (see Fig. 2.2).

From the introduction it's clear that we will also deal with manifolds with boundary, so we recall also this definition. In order to do this we first introduce the following notation.

---

<sup>1</sup>Equivalently to  $\mathbb{R}^n$ .

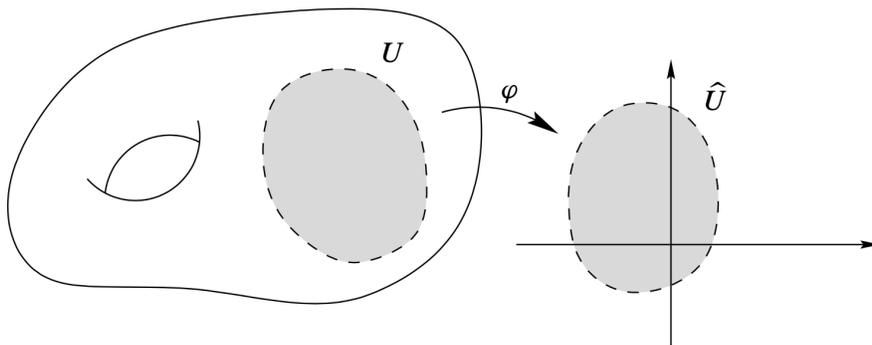


Figure 2.1: The visualization of a coordinate chart map from Lee's textbook on smooth manifolds [Lee12]

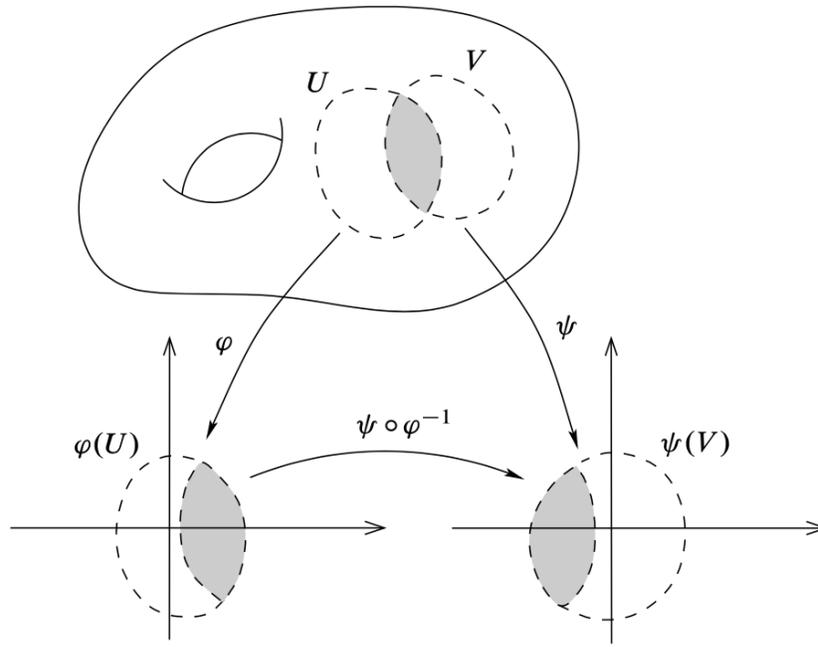


Figure 2.2: The picture of a transition function from [Lee12]

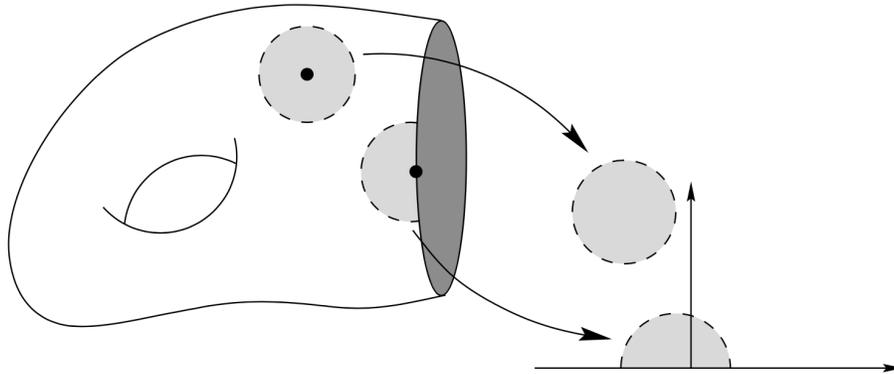


Figure 2.3: The picture of a 2-dimensional manifold with boundary from [Lee12]

**Notation** (Half-space). By  $\mathbb{H}^n$  we denote the  $n$ -dimensional upper (closed) half-space,

$$\mathbb{H}^n = \{(x_1, \dots, x_n) \in \mathbb{R}^n \mid x_1 \leq 0\}$$

**Definition 2.1.2** (Manifold with Boundary). A manifold with boundary of dimension  $n$  is a paracompact Hausdorff topological space  $X$  such that every point  $p \in X$  has an open neighborhood  $U_p$  which is homeomorphic to an open set  $V$  in  $\mathbb{H}^n$ , i.e. the closed<sup>2</sup> half space, via the homeomorphism  $\phi$  of the coordinate chart  $(U_p, \phi)$ .

**Definition 2.1.3** (Boundary of a Manifold). If for  $p \in X$  and some chart  $\phi$  it is the case that  $x_1(\phi(p)) = 0$  (meaning  $\phi(p) \in \{(0, x_2, \dots, x_n)\} \subseteq \mathbb{H}^n$ ), then it does in every chart. We then say that  $p$  is in the *boundary* of  $X$ ,

$$\partial X := \{p \in X : x_1(p) = 0\}$$

<sup>2</sup>in topological sense and not in the manifold sense we later define.

otherwise,  $p$  is in the *interior* of  $X$ , which we denote with  $\text{Int } X$ .

An equivalent definition is:  $p \in \partial X$  if  $p$  has neighborhood  $V$  that is the domain of a coordinate chart  $\psi : V \rightarrow \mathbb{H}^n$  such that  $\psi(V) \cap \partial\mathbb{H}^n \neq \emptyset$  and sending  $p$  to  $\partial\mathbb{H}^n$ .

Specularly, we could have defined the interior of  $X$  to be the set of points  $q \in X$  that have a neighbourhood  $U$  that is the domain of a chart  $\psi : U \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$ .

**Lemma 2.1.4.** *If  $X$  is an  $n$  dimensional manifold with boundary, then  $\partial X$  is a  $n - 1$  dimensional manifold.*

*Proof.* Let  $p \in \partial X$  be an arbitrary point on the boundary of an  $n$ -manifold with boundary. Hence, there is an open neighbourhood  $U_p$  of  $p$  which is homeomorphic to an open set  $V$  in  $\mathbb{H}^n$ ,  $\phi(U_p) \cong V$ . Since  $p \in \partial X$  we know that  $x_1(\phi(p)) = 0$  and  $\phi(p) \in V \cap \mathbb{H}^n$ .  $\phi : U_p \rightarrow V$  can be restricted to a homeomorphism  $\phi|_{\phi^{-1}(V \cap \mathbb{H}^n)} : \phi^{-1}(V \cap \mathbb{H}^n) \xrightarrow{\cong} V \cap \mathbb{H}^n$ . Note that  $\phi^{-1}(V \cap \mathbb{H}^n) = U_p \cap \partial X$  because  $p$  is sent to the boundary  $\partial\mathbb{H}^n$  for every chart. Note also that  $\partial\mathbb{H}^n = \{(0, x_2, \dots, x_n)\}$  and  $\partial\mathbb{H}^n \cong \mathbb{R}^{n-1}$ . Since  $V \cap \mathbb{H}^n \in \partial\mathbb{H}^n$  and  $V \cap \mathbb{H}^n \cong U_p \cap \partial X$ ,  $U_p \cap \partial X$  is homeomorphic to an open set in  $\mathbb{R}^{n-1}$ .  $\square$

**Definition 2.1.5** (Closed Manifold). A manifold is *closed* if it is compact and without boundary, i.e.  $\partial X = \emptyset$ . Conversely, an *open* manifold is also a manifold without boundary but with no closed components, i.e. it has only non-compact components.

In some contexts, it can be interesting to do calculus on a manifold. In order to make sense of this, one needs to add some extra structure to the topology of the manifold which enables investigating if a map between manifolds is smooth.

**Definition 2.1.6** (Smooth Function). Given  $X \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n$  and  $Y \subseteq \mathbb{R}^m$  a function  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  is smooth<sup>3</sup> if each of its component functions has continuous partial derivatives of all order.

The right notion of isomorphism when talking about smooth functions is that of diffeomorphism:

**Definition 2.1.7** (Diffeomorphism). A smooth map  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  is a diffeomorphism when it is bijective and has a smooth inverse map.

**Definition 2.1.8** (Smooth Manifold Without Boundary). A smooth manifold  $X$  is a topological manifold, together with a collection of charts  $\phi_i : U_i \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$ , called smooth structure,  $(U_i, \phi_i)$  such that:

1.  $X = \bigcup_{i \in I} U_i$
2. the pairwise transition functions are smooth in the usual sense of  $\mathbb{R}^n$
3. it is maximal with respect to 1. and 2.

Some call a collection of charts  $(U_i, \phi_i)$  such that  $\{U_i\}_{i \in I}$  is a cover of the whole manifold  $X$  an atlas. A smooth atlas is an atlas where the transition functions and their inverses are smooth. A smooth structure is thus a maximal smooth atlas. We call charts forming the smooth structure smooth charts.

**Example 2.1.9.** A lot of the spaces we think of are smooth manifolds, such as:

<sup>3</sup>Also called infinitely differentiable or  $C^\infty$ .

1. the circle, a dimension 1 manifold
2. a genus  $g$  surface, a dimension 2 manifold
3.  $\emptyset$ , a smooth manifold of any dimension

**Notation.** In these lecture notes, manifolds are *always* smooth, unless explicitly specified.

*Remark.* The definition of smoothness we just provided does not work for manifolds with boundary since to say that the transition functions are smooth we used the notion of smoothness of  $\mathbb{R}^n$  and not of  $\mathbb{H}^n$ , the actual codomain of manifolds *with* boundary. Hence, we characterize now smoothness for  $\mathbb{H}^n$ .

Recall that a map  $f : M \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^m$ , where  $M \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n$  is not necessarily open, is smooth if in a neighbourhood of each  $x \in M$  it can be extended to a smooth function defined on an open subset in  $\mathbb{R}^n$ .

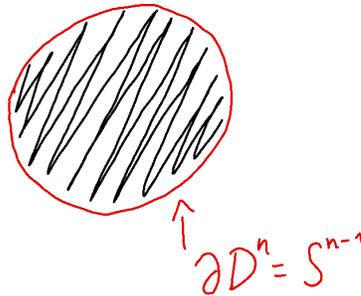
**Definition 2.1.10** (Smoothness in the Half Space). If  $X$  is an open subset of  $\mathbb{H}^n$ , we define  $f : X \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^m$  to be smooth for each  $x \in X$  if  $f$  can be extended to an open subset  $\tilde{X} \in \mathbb{R}^n$ , and  $f$  to a smooth map  $\tilde{f} : \tilde{X} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^m$  such that  $\tilde{f}|_{\tilde{X} \cap \mathbb{H}^n} = f$ .

**Definition 2.1.11** (Smooth Manifold with Boundary). A topological manifold with boundary is smooth if it has a maximal smooth atlas where the transition functions and their inverses are smooth according to 2.1.10.

**Corollary 2.1.12.** *If  $X$  is a smooth  $n$  dimensional manifold with boundary, then  $\partial X$  is a smooth  $n - 1$  dimensional manifold. It follows from the proof for topological manifolds.*

**Example 2.1.13.**

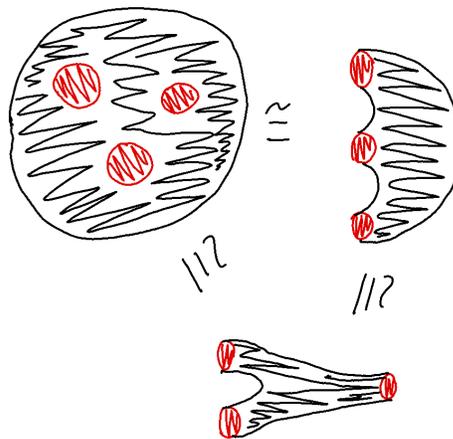
1.  $D^n = \{x \in \mathbb{R}^n \mid \|x\| \leq 1\}$  the  $n$  dimensional disk, which has a sphere as boundary:  
 $\partial D^n = S^{n-1}$



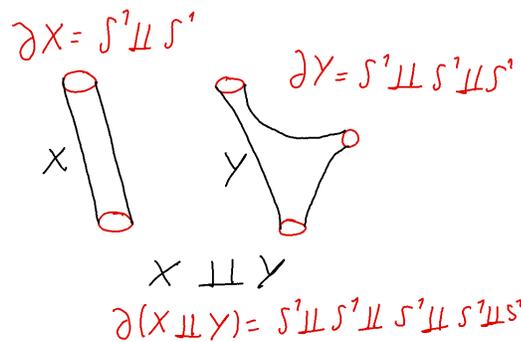
2. Consider 2 dimensional *open* disks, i.e.  $D^2 = \{x \in \mathbb{R}^2 \mid \|x\| < 1\}$ . We can remove such shapes from the sphere and get the manifold  $S^2 \setminus D_1^2 \sqcup D_2^2 \sqcup D_3^2$  which we can visualize

in different ways.

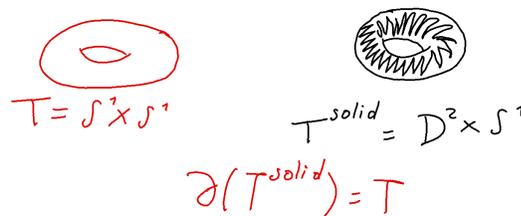
$$\partial(S^2 - (D^2 \amalg D^2 \amalg D^2)) = S^1 \amalg S^1 \amalg S^1$$



3. Let  $X, Y$  be  $n$  manifolds with boundary, then  $X \amalg Y$  is an  $n$  manifold with boundary.



4.  $T = S^1 \times S^1$  is a 2 manifold with  $\partial T = \emptyset$  and  $T^{\text{solid}} = D^2 \times S^1$  is a 3-manifold with  $\partial T^{\text{solid}} = T$ .



**Definition 2.1.14** (Smooth Map to  $\mathbb{R}^n$ ). Let  $X$  be a smooth manifold.  $f : X \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$  is smooth if for each  $x \in X$  there is a smooth chart  $(U, \phi)$  such that  $f = f \circ \phi^{-1}$

This definition can be generalized to maps between smooth manifolds.

**Definition 2.1.15** (Smooth Map between Manifolds). Let  $X$  and  $Y$  be smooth manifolds of dimensions  $m$  and  $n$  and  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  a function between them.  $f$  is smooth if for every  $x \in X$  there is a smooth chart  $(U, \phi)$  of  $X$  where  $x \in U$  and a smooth chart  $(V, \psi)$  of  $Y$  where

$f(x) \in V$  and  $f(U) \subseteq V$  such that  $\tilde{f} = \psi \circ f \circ \phi^{-1}$  is smooth.  $\tilde{f}$  can be represented as in the following diagram:

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 X \supseteq U & \xrightarrow{f|_U} & V \subseteq Y \\
 \downarrow \phi_x \cong & & \downarrow \cong \psi_x \\
 \mathbb{H}^m \supseteq \tilde{U} & \xrightarrow{\tilde{f}} & \tilde{V} \subseteq \mathbb{H}^n
 \end{array}$$

This also allows to define the natural notion of isomorphism in the category of smooth manifolds:

**Definition 2.1.16** (Diffeomorphism of Manifolds). A diffeomorphism is a smooth map with a smooth inverse, i.e. an isomorphism in the category of smooth manifolds.

**Exercise 2.1.17.** Come up with the natural notion of smooth map between manifolds *with* boundary.

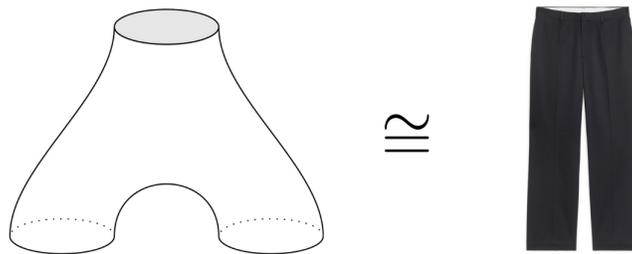
## 2.2 What is a bordism?

**Definition 2.2.1** ( $1^{st}$  variant of the definition of bordism: via *strict equalities*). Let  $Y_0, Y_1$  be closed  $n$  manifolds. A bordism  $(X, p)$  from  $Y_0$  to  $Y_1$  consists of a compact  $(n + 1)$ -manifold with boundary together with a map  $p : \partial X \rightarrow \{0, 1\}$  such that  $Y_0 = p^{-1}(0)$  and  $Y_1 = p^{-1}(1)$ . Thus,  $\partial X = Y_0 \amalg Y_1$ .

We then say that  $Y_0$  and  $Y_1$  are *cobordant*.

We call  $Y_0$  the *incoming* boundary and  $Y_1$  the *outgoing* boundary. We sometimes write  $\partial_{in} X = Y_0$  and  $\partial_{out} X = Y_1$ .

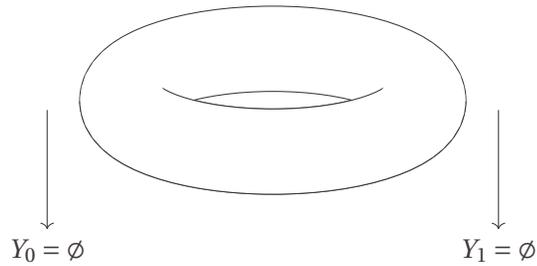
**Example 2.2.2.** “pair of pants”



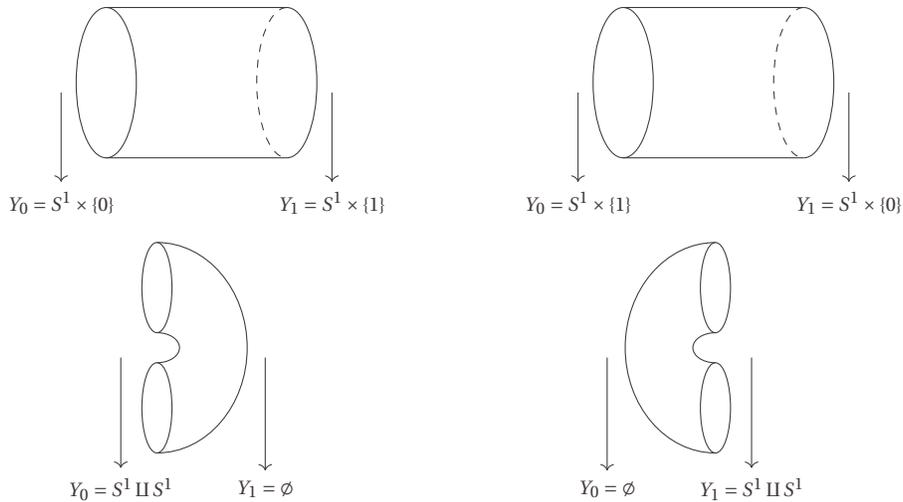
Bordism from  $S^1$  to  $S^1 \amalg S^1$

**Example 2.2.3.**

- The torus is a bordism from  $\emptyset$  to  $\emptyset$ . ( $\partial T = \emptyset = Y_0 \amalg Y_1 \implies Y_0 = Y_1 = \emptyset$ )



- $X = S^1 \times [0, 1]$ , now  $\partial X = S_1 \amalg S_1$  and we can view it as a bordism in 4 ways:



The latter two are sometimes called 'macaroni'.

This shows that different bordisms can arise from the same underlying manifold. We will have a way of differentiating them when we will introduce tangential structures on a manifold, which will enable us to explain in which direction a manifold is oriented.

- Given two  $n$ -manifolds  $M, N$ , their *connected sum* is

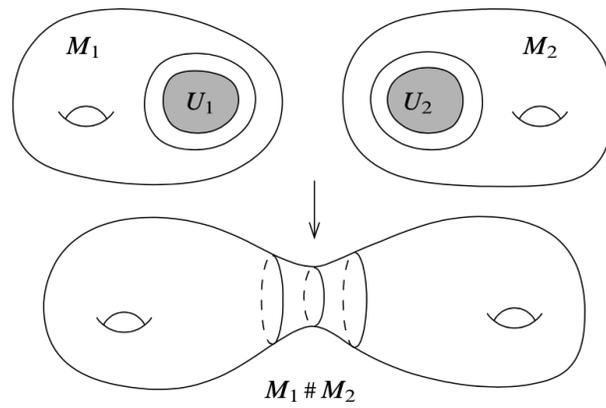
$$M \# N = M \setminus (D^n)^\circ \coprod_{S^{n-1}} N \setminus (D^n)^\circ$$

where  $^\circ$  is for taking the interior and  $\coprod_{S^{n-1}}$  is glueing along the new boundaries in  $M$  and  $N$ .

**Proposition 2.2.4.**  $M \# N$  is an  $n$ -manifold.

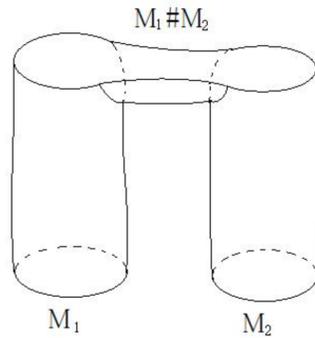
**Lemma 2.2.5.** There is a bordism between  $M \amalg N$  and  $M \# N$ .

*Proof.* A bordism between  $M_1 \amalg M_2$  and  $M_1 \# M_2$  may be constructed in the following manner (proof taken from the Manifold Atlas Project). Consider a cylinder  $M_1 \times I$ , from which we remove an  $\epsilon$ -neighbourhood  $U_\epsilon(v_1 \times 1)$  of the point  $v_1 \times 1$ . Similarly, remove the neighbourhood  $U_\epsilon(v_2 \times 1)$  from  $M_2 \times I$  (each of these two neighbourhoods can be identified with the half of a standard open  $(n + 1)$ -ball). Now connect the two remainders of cylinders by a "half pipe"  $(S_n \leq 0) \times I$  in such a way that the half-sphere  $S_n \leq 0$  is identified with the half-sphere on the boundary of  $U_\epsilon(v_1 \times 1)$ , and  $(S_n \leq 0) \times I$  is identified with the



The picture of a connected sum from Wikipedia

half-sphere on the boundary of  $U_\epsilon(\nu_2 \times 1)$ . Smoothing the angles we obtain a manifold with boundary  $(M_1 \sqcup M_2) \sqcup (M_1 \# M_2)$ .



The illustration by the Manifold Atlas Project of the bordism constructed in the proof above

□

**Theorem 2.2.6.** *Being cobordant is an equivalence relation on closed  $n$ -manifolds.*

*Proof.* We need to show that the relation satisfies the properties of reflexivity, symmetry and transitivity:

- Reflexive:  $Y_0 \sim Y_0$  since we can take  $X = Y_0 \times [0, 1]$  as in the previous example. We then have  $\partial X = Y_0 \times \{0, 1\} \xrightarrow{p} \{0, 1\}$ .
- Symmetric: assume  $Y_0 \sim Y_1$ . Thus, we have  $(X, p)$  from  $Y_0$  to  $Y_1$ . We can use the same manifold and compose  $p$  with the *swap* of 0 and 1 in order to get

$$\tilde{p} = \text{swap} \circ p : \partial X \xrightarrow{p} \{0, 1\} \xrightarrow{\text{swap}} \{1, 0\}$$

Consequently,  $(X, \text{swap} \circ p)$  is a bordism from  $Y_1$  to  $Y_0$ .

- Transitive: we have  $Y_0 \sim Y_1$  via  $(X_1, p_1)$  and  $Y_1 \sim Y_2$  via  $(X_2, p_2)$ . Then we can use as a manifold  $X = X_1 \cup_{Y_1} X_2$  where  $\cup_{Y_1}$  indicates the gluing along  $Y_1$ . This is a manifold but there's some work involved in showing it's a *smooth* manifold and it will be done later on (2.3), via an equivalent definition of bordism. We then think of the boundary in the following way  $\partial X = \partial_{in} X_1 \amalg \partial_{out} X_2$ .

□

## 2.3 Different definitions of bordisms

**Reminder** (Definition 2.2.1 of Bordism). Let  $Y_0, Y_1$  be closed  $n$ -manifolds. A bordism  $(X, p)$  from  $Y_0$  to  $Y_1$  consists of a compact  $(n + 1)$ -manifold with boundary together with a map  $p : \partial X \rightarrow \{0, 1\}$  such that  $Y_0 \cong p^{-1}(0)$  and  $Y_1 \cong p^{-1}(1)$  (hence  $\partial X \cong Y_0 \amalg Y_1$ ). We say that  $Y_0$  and  $Y_1$  are *cobordant*.

There was a complaint: why don't we use diffeomorphisms instead of the highlighted equalities? This question arises because even with simple examples the equality seems too strict:

**Reminder** (from 2.2.6). Being cobordant is an equivalence relation.

In particular, for any closed  $n$ -manifold  $Y$  we have  $Y \sim Y$ . The bordism is given by the cylinder  $Y \times [0, 1]$ , where  $p : Y \times \{0, 1\} \rightarrow \{0, 1\}$ . Then  $Y \times \{0\} = p^{-1}(0)$ , but  $Y \neq Y \times \{0\}$ ! It seems like our previous definition does not actually give rise to an equivalence relation. Instead, if we substitute the strict equalities with diffeomorphisms (isomorphisms in the category of smooth manifolds) things seem to work out flawlessly:

**Definition 2.3.1** ( $2^{nd}$  variant of the definition of bordism: via diffeomorphisms). Let  $Y_0, Y_1$  be closed  $n$ -manifolds. A bordism from  $Y_0$  to  $Y_1$  is a quadruple  $(X, p, \phi_0, \phi_1)$  consisting of a compact  $(n + 1)$ -manifold with boundary  $\partial X$  together with maps

$$\begin{aligned} p &: \partial X \rightarrow \{0, 1\} \\ \phi_0 &: Y_0 \xrightarrow{\cong} p^{-1}(0) \\ \phi_1 &: Y_1 \xrightarrow{\cong} p^{-1}(1) \end{aligned}$$

(we therefore have  $\partial X \cong Y_0 \amalg Y_1$ ).

**Example 2.3.2.** Let  $\psi : M \xrightarrow{\cong} N$  be a diffeomorphism. Then  $(M \times [0, 1], M \times \{0, 1\} \xrightarrow{p} \{0, 1\}, \phi_0, \phi_1)$ , with maps

$$\begin{aligned} \phi_0 &: M \xrightarrow{id \times \{0\}} p^{-1}(0) = M \times \{0\} \\ \phi_1 &: N \xrightarrow{\psi^{-1} \times \{1\}} p^{-1}(1) = M \times \{1\} \end{aligned}$$

gives a bordism from  $M$  to  $N$ . This is called the mapping cylinder of  $\psi$ .

$\Rightarrow$  under the new definition, any two diffeomorphic manifolds are also cobordant.

Why does this not change the definition of bordism? Because any diffeomorphism also gives a bordism in the old sense: Given  $M \xrightarrow{\cong} N$ , take the gluing  $(M \times I) \amalg_{\psi} N$  so that  $Y_1 = N$  and  $Y_0 = M \times \{0\} = M$  (abusing notation).

Now we prove the transitivity of the relation 'being cobordant'. We do that by showing that given  $X$  from  $Y_0$  to  $Y_1$  and  $X'$  from  $Y_1$  to  $Y_2$ , we can glue them along the boundary in common,  $Y_1$ , to obtain a bordism from  $Y_0$  to  $Y_2$ . In order to achieve this, we need to introduce the following notion:

**Definition 2.3.3** (Collar of a boundary). Let  $X$  be a manifold with boundary. A collar of the boundary is an open set  $U \subseteq X$  containing  $\partial X$  together with a diffeomorphism  $(-\epsilon, 0] \times \partial M \rightarrow U$  for some  $\epsilon > 0$ .

**Theorem 2.3.4.** *The boundary of a manifold with boundary always has a collar.*

*Idea of the proof.* We start with a manifold with boundary, locally at  $x \in \partial X$  we have

$$(-\epsilon_x, 0] \times V_x \xrightarrow{\cong} U_x \subseteq \mathbb{H}^n$$

where  $V_x$  is an open neighbourhood of  $x$  in  $\partial X$ . Now we use a standard trick in differential geometry/topology (see [Hir76]): globally patch these diffeomorphisms using a partition of unity. It works if  $X$  is compact.  $\square$

**Definition 2.3.5** ( $3^{rd}$  variant of the definition of bordism: via collars). Let  $Y_0$  and  $Y_1$  be closed  $n$ -manifolds. A bordism from  $Y_0$  to  $Y_1$  is a quadruple  $(M, p, \phi_0, \phi_1)$  with  $M$  and  $p$  as before.  $\phi_0, \phi_1$  are given by

$$\begin{aligned} \phi_0 &: [0, \epsilon] \times Y_0 \rightarrow U \cong p^{-1}(0) \\ \phi_1 &: (-\epsilon, 0] \times Y_1 \rightarrow V \cong p^{-1}(1) \end{aligned}$$

where  $U$  and  $V$  together form a collar of the boundary of  $M$ .

Moreover,

$$([0, \epsilon] \times Y_0) \amalg ((-\epsilon, 0] \times Y_1) \xrightarrow{\phi_0 \amalg \phi_1} (U \amalg V) \cong (p^{-1}(0) \amalg p^{-1}(1)) = \partial M$$

This variant of the definition is equivalent to the other two but we would unfortunately need a lot of differential topology in order to prove this.

However, with the third definition we can finally prove the following claim which then is what we were missing to prove transitivity of being cobordant.

**Claim.**  $X \cup_{Y_1} X'$  admits a smooth structure.

*Transitivity of cobordant.* We need a maximal atlas with smooth transition functions. Clearly, in the interior points of  $X$  and  $X'$  this exists since we can use directly the charts of  $X$  and  $X'$ . The problem is the double collar around  $Y_1$ . So we need to construct charts around points on  $Y_1$ . Take  $U_1^- \cup_{Y_1} U_1^+$  in an open neighbourhood. Then via  $U_1^- \cup_{Y_1} U_1^+ \xrightarrow{\phi_1 \cup \phi_1'} (-\epsilon, \epsilon) \times Y_0 = (-\epsilon, 0] \cup [0, \epsilon) \times Y_0$  which contains  $(-\epsilon, \epsilon) \times V_x$  which maps to  $\mathbb{R}^n$  via  $\psi_x$  and thereby generating a maximal atlas.

Let  $X$  be a bordism between  $Y_0$  to  $Y_1$  and  $X'$  between  $Y_1$  and  $Y_0$ .

$$\begin{aligned} [0, \epsilon] \times Y_0 &\xrightarrow{\phi_0} U \\ (-\epsilon, 0] \times Y_1 &\xrightarrow{\phi_1} U_1^- \\ [0, \epsilon] \times Y_1 &\xrightarrow{\cong} (-\epsilon, 0] \times Y_1 \xrightarrow{\phi_1'} U_1^+ \\ (-\epsilon, 0] \times Y_2 &\xrightarrow{\phi_1'} U_2 \end{aligned}$$

$\square$

## 2.4 Tangential Structures

### 2.4.1 Orientations and the tangent bundle

**Definition 2.4.1** (Tangent bundle). The tangent bundle  $TM$  of a bundle  $M$  is the vector bundle over  $M$  of rank  $n$  with

1. fibers given by the tangent spaces  $T_p M$  at each point  $p \in M$ :

$$(TM)_p = T_p M$$

2. (as a set)  $TM = \coprod_{p \in M} T_p M$  with natural projection:

$$TM = \coprod_{p \in M} T_p M \xrightarrow{p} M \tag{2.1}$$

$$(p, v) \mapsto p \tag{2.2}$$

It is possible to define a topology on  $TM$  such that it is a smooth  $2n$  manifold:  $(U, \phi)$  chart of  $M$ , we have a chart of  $TM$ ,  $(p^{-1}(U), \tilde{\phi})$  by looking at preimages of  $U$  under the projection map and we construct the local trivialization with the usual construction. This is summarized by the fact that the following diagram commutes:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} p^{-1}(U) = TU = \coprod_{p \in U} T_p M & \xrightarrow{\tilde{\phi} = (\phi, d\phi)} & T\tilde{U} = \tilde{U} \times \mathbb{R}^n \\ \downarrow p & & \downarrow p|_{T\tilde{U}} \\ U & \xrightarrow[\phi]{\cong} & \tilde{U} \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n \end{array}$$

This is actually an atlas with smooth structure. Transition functions  $g_{ij} = \tilde{\phi}_j \circ \tilde{\phi}_i^{-1}|_{\tilde{\phi}_i(U_i \cap U_j)}$  are actually the jacobian and we have  $g_{ij} \in GL_n(\mathbb{R})$ .

**Definition 2.4.2** (Orientability and admissibility of  $G$  structure). If  $TM$  has local trivializations such that the transition functions between overlapping trivializations are in  $GL_n^+(\mathbb{R}) \subseteq GL_n(\mathbb{R})$  then we say that  $M$  is orientable.

In other words "The structure group of  $TM$  can be reduced to  $GL_n^+(\mathbb{R}) \subset GL_n(\mathbb{R})$ ".

Analogously, given some  $G \subset GL_n(\mathbb{R})$ , we can say  $M$  admits a  $G$  structure if the local trivialisations are such that  $\phi_{i,j} \in G$ , i.e. "the structure group can be reduced to  $G$ ". In this sense, being orientable is the same as admitting a  $GL_n^+(\mathbb{R})$  structure.

**Example 2.4.3.**

- $\mathbb{R}^n$ : we have  $T\mathbb{R}^n \cong \mathbb{R}^n \times \mathbb{R}^n$ , meaning the tangent bundle is a trivial bundle.
- $S^1$ : we again have the trivial bundle  $TS^1 \cong S^1 \times \mathbb{R}$
- $S^2$ : now  $TS^2 \not\cong S^2 \times \mathbb{R}^2$ , it is not a trivial bundle. This follows from the hairy ball theorem.

All these are orientable. Instead examples of non orientable manifolds are the Klein bottle, the Möbius strip and  $\mathbb{R}P^2$ .

**Definition 2.4.4** (Orientation and  $G$  structure). An orientation (equivalently, a  $GL_n^+(\mathbb{R})$  structure) of  $M$  is an equivalence class of trivialisations  $\{(\tilde{U}, \tilde{\phi})\}$  of  $TM$  such that  $\det g_{ij} > 0$  (i.e.  $g_{ij} \in GL^+(n, \mathbb{R})$ ).

Analogously, given some  $G \subset GL_n(\mathbb{R})$ , a  $G$  structure on  $TM$  is an equivalence class of trivialisations  $\{(\tilde{U}, \tilde{\phi})\}$  such that  $g_{ij} \in G$ .

We can now note the following lemma which is related to the fact that on a manifold one can always construct a Riemannian metric.

**Lemma 2.4.5.** *A  $GL_n^+(\mathbb{R})$  structure is the same as an  $SO(n)$  structure.*

How many orientations can  $M$  have? 0 if it's not orientable, 2 if it's connected and orientable, in general  $2^{\#\text{connected components}}$  if it's orientable.

**Definition 2.4.6** (Opposite orientation).  $M$  oriented with charts  $\{(U_i, \phi_i)\}$ . The opposite orientation on  $M$  is given by:  $\{(U_i, \bar{\phi}_i)\}$  in which  $\bar{\phi}_i$  is given by the following composition

$$U_i \xrightarrow{\phi_i} \mathbb{R}^n \xrightarrow{x_1 \mapsto -x_1} \mathbb{R}^n \quad (2.3)$$

We will indicate  $M$  with opposite orientation by  $\overline{M}$ .

**Example 2.4.7.**  $S^1$

Note that a diffeomorphism between two orientable manifolds can induce orientations: if we have  $f : M \rightarrow N$  and choose an orientation on  $M$  i.e. a proper choice of trivialization  $(U_\alpha, \phi_\alpha)$ , then on  $N$  we can define a trivialization  $(V_\alpha, \psi_\alpha)$  with  $V_\alpha := f(U_\alpha)$  and  $\psi_\alpha := \phi_\alpha \circ f^{-1}$ . First note that, being  $f$  a diffeomorphism, everything is perfectly well defined. Then note:  $\psi_\alpha \circ \psi_\beta^{-1} = (\phi_\alpha \circ f^{-1}) \circ (f \circ \phi_\beta^{-1}) = \phi_\alpha \circ \phi_\beta^{-1}$  and thus the determinand of the transition functions on  $N$  is the same as the ones of  $M$ !

**Definition 2.4.8** (Orientation preserving and reversing diffeomorphism). A diffeomorphism  $f : M \rightarrow N$  between oriented manifolds is orientation preserving (reversing) if the orientation on  $N$  induced by the one on  $M$  is the (opposite) orientation on  $N \iff \det(df_p) > 0$  (or  $< 0$ ) for all  $p \in M$ .

**Example 2.4.9.** Consider maps  $S^1 \rightarrow S^1$  (implicitly using the same orientation on each  $S^1$ ). The identity is an orientation preserving map, while the map  $x \mapsto \bar{x}$  is orientation reversing (considering  $S^1 \subset \mathbb{C}$ ).

We could instead consider maps  $S^1 \rightarrow \overline{S^1}$ . In this case the identity is orientation reversing.

Consider a oriented manifold  $M$  with boundary. By a previous theorem we know that  $\partial M$  is a manifold itself and thus we can talk of it's tangent bundle  $T\partial M$ . At the same time, we can "glue another collar"  $[0, \epsilon)$  onto the boundary so that the points of the boundary are now in the interior of the new extended manifold thus allowing us to define the tangent space  $T_p M$  for  $p \in \partial M$  (this construction is independent from the extension). Now, we can consider  $T\partial M$  as a subspace of  $TM|_{\partial M}$  via the inclusion  $i : \partial M \rightarrow M$  which induces  $i_* : T(\partial M) \rightarrow TM$ . We can then define the quotient

$$\nu_p = T_p M / i_* T_p \partial M \cong \mathbb{R}$$

and we can write the following short exact sequence of bundles on  $\partial M$ .

$$0 \rightarrow i_* T(\partial M) \rightarrow TM \rightarrow \nu \rightarrow 0 \quad (2.4)$$

This is saying that the tangent bundle over  $M$  on a boundary point is the tangent bundle of the boundary plus an extra “normal” direction  $\nu$ .

We can fix a local chart on  $M$  with coordinates  $x_1, \dots, x_n$  so that we have a positive oriented basis of  $TM$  with  $\frac{\partial}{\partial x_1}$  basis for  $\nu$  and so that it’s “pointing outward” (i.e. under pushforward of the chart  $(\phi_\alpha)_*(\partial/\partial x_1)$  has positive first component,  $x_1$ ), so that removing it from the basis of  $TM$  we have an induced orientation on the boundary.

From this, we can infer the following consequences:

1.  $\nu$  has “two orientations” ( $\cong$  normal directions,  $\pi_0(\mathbb{R} \setminus 0)$ )
2. an orientation on  $M$  induces one on  $\partial M$
3. an orientation on  $\partial M$  induces one on  $\partial M \times (0, 1)$  (if I choose an orientation on  $(0, 1)$ ) but in general we can’t extend this construction to all of  $M$ .

More generally, note that if  $M$  and  $N$  are oriented, then  $M \times N$  is oriented. [Fre13]

Special case: 0 dimensional manifold.  $M = \{x_1, \dots, x_k\}$ , but  $T_x M = 0$  so our definition fails! So in this case the definition does not capture what we would like, in particular the consequences we found before are either tautological or boring. We can however use 3. to construct a new definition.

**Definition 2.4.10.** An orientation on a 0 dimensional manifold is a map  $M \rightarrow \{\pm 1\}$  ( $\iff$  orientation of  $M \times (0, 1)$  if I fixed a chosen orientation of  $(0, 1)$ ).

**Definition 2.4.11** (Oriented bordism). Let  $Y_0$  and  $Y_1$  be oriented closed  $n$ -manifolds. An oriented bordism from  $Y_0$  to  $Y_1$  is an oriented  $(n + 1)$ -manifold  $X$  together with  $p : \partial X \rightarrow \{0, 1\}$  and  $\psi : \partial X \rightarrow \overline{Y_0} \amalg Y_1$  an orientation preserving diffeomorphism.

Note: the choice of  $\psi$  already clarifies what is the incoming boundary, i.e.  $\overline{Y_0}$ , and the outgoing one, i.e.  $Y_1$ , so that  $p$  is actually too much data and so it can be dropped.

This is an equivalence relation which we call “being oriented cobordant”, which allows us to give the following definition.

**Definition 2.4.12.** The oriented bordism group is:

$$\Omega_n^{or} = \{\text{closed oriented } n \text{ manifolds}\} / \{\text{oriented } n + 1 \text{ cobordisms}\} \quad (2.5)$$

*Remark.* Note that  $\emptyset$  is an oriented  $n$  manifold with a unique orientation.

## 2.4.2 Framings

Recall the definition of a  $G$  structure given above. As stated previously, if  $G = GL_n^+(\mathbb{R})$  a  $G$  structure is an orientation. Another choice is simply to take  $G = \{e\}$ , this gives a *framing*, which amounts to a smooth choice of basis for every point. We can talk about *frameable* or *parallelizable* manifolds, meaning they admit a framing. As a consequence, the manifold has a trivial tangent bundle we have  $TM \cong M \times \mathbb{R}^n$  and a choice of framing corresponds to a choice of isomorphism.

**Example 2.4.13.** Some examples of frameable manifolds are the following:

- For  $\mathbb{R}^n$ , we have  $T\mathbb{R}^n \cong \mathbb{R}^n \times \mathbb{R}^n$

- $S^1$
- $S^1 \times S^1$
- Any Lie group  $H$  has  $TH \cong H \times \mathbb{R}^{\dim}$
- What about  $S^2$ ? Not frameable because of the hairy ball theorem (we would need two vector fields that are a basis at each point of  $S^2$  but because of the theorem we don't even have one).

In fact, there aren't many closed connected 2 manifolds with framing:

**Fact.** *The only closed connected 2 manifolds with framing is the torus.*

This follows from the Poincaré–Hopf index theorem<sup>4</sup>.

**Lemma 2.4.14.** *Any framing on an  $n$  manifold  $M$  induces an orientation on  $M$ .*

From our definition this is immediate because  $\{e\} \subseteq GL_n^+$  (however there are other definitions of orientation for which it's not immediate).

## 2.5 Classifications of 1- and 2-manifolds

In this section we classify 1- and 2-manifolds up to diffeomorphism. This will make our life much easier when we will later classify such manifolds up to cobordism, via cobordism invariants.

Note that any manifold, of any dimension, is diffeomorphic to the disjoint union of its connected components. Hence, two manifolds are diffeomorphic if and only if there is a 1-to-1 correspondence between their connected components such that the corresponding components are diffeomorphic. For this reason, when classifying  $n$ -manifolds it is sufficient to classify connected ones.

In the next two subsections we aim at doing this: classifying connected 1- and 2-manifolds, so that we classify all 1- and 2-manifolds.

### 2.5.1 Classification of 1-manifolds

We took the proof from [MW97, Appendix] and <https://math.mit.edu/classes/18.966/2014SP/965/class.pdf>, which is essentially the proof in Milnor's book but rephrased without explicitly using the concept of 'arc-length'.

**Theorem 2.5.1** (Classification of (connected) 1-manifolds). *Any connected 1-manifold is diffeomorphic to:*

- $[0, 1]$
- $(0, 1]$
- $(0, 1)$

---

<sup>4</sup>This differential topology theorem relates the index of a vector field to the Euler characteristic of the manifold. In particular, it implies that a nonvanishing vector field can only exist if the Euler characteristic of the manifold is zero.

- $S^1$

In order to prove this, we make use of parametrizations.

**Definition 2.5.2** (Parametrization). Let  $M$  be an  $n$ -manifold,  $U_x \subseteq M$  a neighbourhood of  $x$  and  $V \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n$ . Any diffeomorphism  $g : V \rightarrow U_x$  is a parametrization of  $U_x$ .

The inverse map  $U_x \rightarrow V$  is called a system of coordinates on  $U_x$ .

Now, we can state the following lemma, which is the key to our proof of the classification of 1-manifolds

**Lemma 2.5.3.** *Let  $M$  be a 1-manifold, and let  $f, g : (0, 1) \rightarrow M$  be two parametrizations. Then  $f(0, 1) \cap g(0, 1)$  has at most two components. If it has one component, then there is a parametrization  $h : (0, 1) \rightarrow M$  so that  $h(0, 1) = f(0, 1) \cap g(0, 1)$ . If it has two components, then  $f(0, 1) \cup g(0, 1)$*

*Proof.* Let  $\Gamma = \{(s, t) \mid f(s) = g(t)\} \subseteq (0, 1) \times (0, 1)$ .  $\Gamma$  is closed, since it is the preimage of the continuous function  $f \times g : (0, 1) \times (0, 1) \rightarrow M \times M$ , which is in sometimes called diagonal map and denoted  $\Delta$ . Let  $s_0$  be a point contained in the topological boundary of  $f^{-1}(g(0, 1)) \subseteq (0, 1) \subseteq [0, 1]$ . Since  $f^{-1}(g(0, 1))$  is open,  $s_0 \notin f^{-1}(g(0, 1))$ . Let  $s_k$  be a sequence in  $f^{-1}(g(0, 1))$  that converges to  $s_0$ . Then

□

## 2.5.2 Classification of 2-manifolds with boundary

The aim of this chapter is to prove the aforementioned classification of compact 2-dimensional manifolds with the use of Morse theory (see 3.2.1). We remind the reader: let  $M$  be a compact 2-manifold with genus  $g$ , then

- if  $M$  is oriented,  $M$  is classified by its genus  $g$ . In particular  $M$  is diffeomorphic to  $\Sigma_g := T \# \dots \# T$ , the connected sum of  $g$  tori, and where we define  $\Sigma_0 := S^2$ .
- Instead if  $M$  is non orientable<sup>5</sup>,  $M$  is diffeomorphic to  $g$  copies of the real projective plane, i.e.  $\mathbb{R}P^2 \# \dots \# \mathbb{R}P^2$ .

One can find a thorough covering of this result in [Hir76, Chapter 3, page 200].

In addition, we will also find a classification of compact 2-manifolds with boundary (which we will simply call *surfaces*). To do it we will need Morse theory. What is the idea? Given a surface  $M$  (it works in greater generality but now we're only interested in surfaces), find a map  $f : M \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  which is "nice". Then by analyzing properties of  $f$  we can recover the topology of the surface (i.e. the surface up to diffeomorphism).

This section is based on [Hir76] and [Kos13].

## 2.5.3 Introduction to Morse Theory

Morse theory is a way to extract informations on a manifold  $M$  from smartly chosen functions

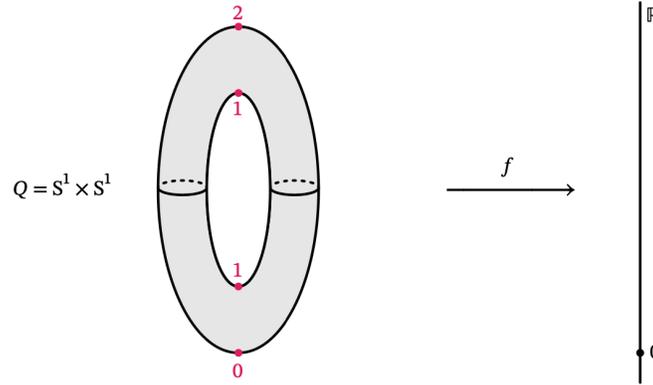
$$f : M \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$$

<sup>5</sup>see [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Genus\\_\(mathematics\)](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Genus_(mathematics)) for what is meant by genus of a non orientable surface

Such smart functions are called Morse functions. It is very powerful, for instance, it plays a major role in the sketch of the proof of the cobordism hypothesis, see [Lur09], and in symplectic topology, see [Tan22]. Thus, it is very useful to have an idea of how it works!

However, we will only use it to classify 2-dimensional manifolds. Now, we introduce the fundamental tool of Morse theory: the Morse function.

Take as an example the projection map from the torus (stolen from [Tan22]):



Here we have 4 special points: the top and bottom, and then the two points in the middle. What happens in these points is that the shape of the preimage changes:

- the preimage of the top (and bottom) is a point
- the preimage of points between the top and middle point is a circle
- the preimage of the middle points is a wedge of circles
- the preimage of points between the middle points is a disjoint union of circles.

Note that at the special points the preimage is generally not a smooth manifold. These "special" points are critical points of  $f$ :

**Definition 2.5.4** (Critical point and critical value). Let  $M$  be a closed  $n$ -manifold and  $f : M \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  a smooth map. A critical point of  $f$  is a point  $p \in M$  such that  $(df)_p : T_p M \rightarrow T_{f(p)} \mathbb{R} \cong \mathbb{R}$  is *not* surjective. A critical value is the image of a critical point.

So a critical point is a point of  $M$  with tangent bundle “vertical” with respect to  $\mathbb{R}$  (thinking of  $f$  as some kind of projection).

The main goal then is to recover (up to diffeomorphism)  $M$  from knowing the critical points and the behaviour in a neighborhood thereof.

Firstly we can define what we mean by a “nice” function:

**Definition 2.5.5.** A Morse function is a smooth map  $f : M \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  such that all critical points are nondegenerate, that is if  $p$  is a critical point of  $f$ , then  $\text{Hess}(f)_p := \left( \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial x_i \partial x_j} (p) \right)_{i,j}$  is non-singular (i.e.  $\det(\text{Hess}(f)_p) \neq 0$ ).

*Remark.* This is independent of the choice of chart.

**Example 2.5.6.** Let's start with a nonexample: the parabolic cylinder. With coordinates  $x_1, x_2$ , the Morse function drawn can be written as  $f(x_1, x_2) = -x_1^2$ . Then at every critical point the Hessian is given by

$$\text{Hess}(f)_p = \begin{pmatrix} -2 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \quad (2.6)$$

which is clearly singular.

Another nonexample is given by the function  $f(x) = x^3$ . Consider the map that goes from the graph of  $f$  to its  $y$  coordinate. Again the Hessian is singular at the critical point.

We're then interested in the local picture at a critical point.

**Definition 2.5.7** (Index of a critical point). If  $p \in M$  is a nondegenerate critical point of  $f : M \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ , the index of  $f$  at  $p$  is

$$\text{ind}_f(p) = \text{index of Hess}(f)_p = \# \text{ negative eigenvalues of Hess}(f)_p. \quad (2.7)$$

**Example 2.5.8.** Consider the following basic examples:

- $f(x_1, x_2) = -x_1^2 - x_2^2$ , this has critical point  $p = (0, 0)$  and there the Hessian is given by  $\begin{pmatrix} -2 & 0 \\ 0 & -2 \end{pmatrix}$ . We therefore see that  $p$  is nondegenerate and that  $\text{ind}_f(p) = 2$ .
- $f(x_1, x_2) = -x_1^2 + x_2^2$ , very similar, but  $\text{ind}_f(p) = 1$ ,
- $f(x_1, x_2) = +x_1^2 - x_2^2$ , again  $\text{ind}_f(p) = 1$ ,
- $f(x_1, x_2) = +x_1^2 + x_2^2$ , now  $\text{ind}_f(p) = 0$ .

The examples above are very important, because locally Morse functions are always of one of those forms.

**Lemma 2.5.9** (Morse Lemma I). *Let  $p \in M^n$  be a nondegenerate critical point of  $f : M^n \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  of index  $k$ . Then there is a chart  $(U, \phi)$  around  $p$  such that the map  $\tilde{f}$  defined as*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} U & \xrightarrow{\phi} & \mathbb{R}^n \\ \downarrow f & \swarrow \tilde{f} & \\ \mathbb{R} & & \end{array} \quad (2.8)$$

is given by:

$$\tilde{f}(x_1, \dots, x_n) = f(p) - \sum_{i=1}^k x_i^2 + \sum_{j=k+1}^n x_j^2 \quad (2.9)$$

*Idea of proof.* Given a nondenerate critical point of index  $k$  we only know that  $\text{Hess}(f)_p$  has  $k$  negative eigenvalues, is nonsingular and is diagonalizable. That allows me to change the basis so that the function takes that form, essentially doing a Taylor expansion. In particular then the chart can be chosen such that the function is *exactly* that expression.  $\square$

Given a Morse function  $f : M \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ ,  $p \in M$ , then we have the following immediate consequences of the lemma:

- if  $p$  is critical (and nondegenerate since  $f$  is a Morse function), because of the lemma we have a chart as above. Then the level sets  $f^{-1}(f(p))$  look like a neighborhood of 0 in a quadric (locally).
- if  $p$  is regular (that is, non-singular), by the implicit function theorem there are coordinates such that  $f(x_1, \dots, x_n) = x_1$ . So the level sets  $f^{-1}(f(p))$  look like a submanifold in  $\mathbb{R}^n$  (locally).

This explains what we noticed initially for the example of the torus, that the level set changes when passing a critical point. In particular it always changes in one of the ways shown in 2.5.8. This observation will be more complete after Morse Lemma II and Theorem 2.5.16 below.

The following theorem justifies the use of Morse theory to study manifolds.

**Theorem 2.5.10.** *For any manifold Morse functions exist.*

It's not trivial but it can be proven with tools from differential topology.

Example of something we can prove with Morse functions:

**Theorem 2.5.11.** *The Euler characteristic can be calculated by knowing the critical points and the corresponding indices of a Morse function:*

$$\chi(M) = \sum (-1)^k c_k \quad (2.10)$$

where  $c_k$  is the number of critical points of index  $k$ .

This is quite clear for the sphere and the genus  $g$  surfaces with the usual Morse functions, but it's interesting that for *any* Morse function we have this result.

The following theorem also seems very plausible from the drawings:

**Lemma 2.5.12** (Morse Lemma II). *Let  $f : M \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  be a Morse function,  $a < b \in \mathbb{R}$  such that  $f$  does not have a critical value in  $[a, b]$ . Then*

$$M_a = f^{-1}((-\infty, a]) \hookrightarrow M_b = f^{-1}((-\infty, b]) \quad (2.11)$$

*is a (smooth) deformation retract. In particular, it induces a diffeomorphism  $f^{-1}(a) \cong f^{-1}(b)$ .*

Concretely this tells us that the level set *only* changes when crossing a critical point.

*Remark.* The proof uses flow along vector field  $\frac{\text{grad } f}{|\text{grad } f|} \dots$

We will restrict to the following class of Morse functions:

**Definition 2.5.13** (Admissible Morse function). A Morse function  $f : M \rightarrow [a, b]$  is admissible if  $\partial M = f^{-1}(a) \cup f^{-1}(b)$  and  $a, b$  are regular values.

The fact that they're regular values is important, since it gives us that a neighborhood of  $f^{-1}(a)$  is diffeomorphic to a cylinder  $f^{-1}(a) \times [0, \epsilon]$ , i.e. a collar (and the same is true for a neighborhood of  $f^{-1}(b)$ ). So an admissible Morse function naturally equips  $M$  with the structure of a cobordism from  $f^{-1}(a)$  to  $f^{-1}(b)$ .

Another useful theorem, analogous to 2.5.10 is the following:

**Theorem 2.5.14.** *Admissible Morse functions exist.*

We would now like to know *how* the level set changes before and after the critical point. In order to do this we first introduce the concept of handle attachment.

**Definition 2.5.15** (Handle attachment). Let  $M^n$  be an  $n$ -manifold and let  $H^j := D^j \times D^{n-j}$  for  $j = 0, 1, \dots, n$ . In addition let  $f : \partial D^j \times D^{n-j} \hookrightarrow \partial M^n$  be an embedding and note that  $\partial D^j \times D^{n-j}$  also embeds into  $H^j$ . We can then *attach a  $j$ -handle* to  $M^n$  by gluing along  $f$  to obtain the manifold  $M^n \amalg_f H^j$ .

This concept will be studied in one of the exercises. The following claim makes the definition meaningful:

**Claim.**  $M^n \amalg_f H^j$  has a smooth structure.

Since we're interested in 2 manifolds, let's make explicit what it means to attach a  $j$  handle to a 2 manifold:

- $j = 0, H^0 = D^0 \times D^2 \cong D^2$  and we attach along the empty set (since  $\partial D^0 = \emptyset$ ), i.e. we take the disjoint union with  $D^2$ .
- $j = 1, H^1 = D^1 \times D^1$  and we attach along  $\partial D^1 \times D^1$ , i.e. along two segments
- $j = 2, H^2 = D^2 \times D^0$  and we attach along  $\partial D^2 \times D^0 \cong S^1$ , i.e. along a circle

We can now see how the level sets change at a critical point.

**Theorem 2.5.16** ([Hir76] Theorem 3.2, p.157). *Let  $M^n$  be compact and  $f : M^n \rightarrow [a, b]$  an admissible Morse function. Suppose that  $f$  has a unique critical point  $z$  of index  $j$ . There is an embedding  $\iota : D^j \hookrightarrow M^n$  with image  $e^j := \text{im } \iota$  (called "belt disk"), satisfying:*

- $z \in e^j$ ;
- $e^j \subset M^n \setminus f^{-1}(b)$ ;
- $f^{-1}(a) \cap e^j = \partial e^j = \iota(\partial D^j)$ , this is also called "belt sphere";
- $M$  deformation retracts onto  $f^{-1}(a) \cup e^j$ .

The embedding can then be extended to  $e^j \times D^{n-j} =: H^j$ . We can now choose an  $a'$  with  $a < a' < f(z)$  and we then have

$$M^n \cong f^{-1}([a, a']) \cup_{\bar{\iota}} H^j \quad (2.12)$$

(for  $n = 2$  this is a unique diffeomorphism up to isotopy<sup>6</sup>).

This theorem explains what happens to the level sets when we meet a critical point of index  $j$ : we attach a  $j$  handle! To use the terms above: we extend the belt disk to a  $j$  handle and attach it to the boundary by gluing along the belt sphere (which is also extended). Of course, all the drawings presented are for 2 manifolds and we will only apply these results to such manifolds, but this theorem works more in general!

**Example 2.5.17.**

- index 0:  $M = S^2$  we then have  $e^0 = \{z\}$ ,  $\iota : D^0 = pt \hookrightarrow M$  and  $\bar{\iota} : D^0 \times D^2 \hookrightarrow M$ .

<sup>6</sup>See 4.8.17 for the definition of isotopy.

- Now what happens when attaching a 1-handle  $\text{im } \bar{i}$ ? Chose:  $D^{n-k} \hookrightarrow \partial(S^1 \times [0, 1] \amalg S^1 \times [0, 1])$
- Start with  $S^1 \times [0, 1]$ . Want to attach a 1-handle  $D^1 \times D^1$ . But now we can attach in two ways. With a simple band or with a twisted one.
- Let's start again with a cylinder and attach a 2-handle  $D^2 \times D^0$ , so I kind of close one of the two side of the cylinder. We see that the 1-handle and the 2-handle kind of cancel each other out!
- Analogously, starting with a disk and attaching a 0-handle and then a 1-handle, these also cancel each other out!

**Proposition 2.5.18** (VI 7.1 in [Kos13], "Handle slides"). *If  $\tilde{M} := (M \amalg_f H^j) \amalg_g H^i$  and  $i \leq j$ , then  $\tilde{M}$  can be obtained by first attaching  $H^i$  and then  $H^j$ .*

Note that the word *can* in the proposition is important: if we were to simply commute the two attachments  $(M \amalg_g H^i) \amalg_f H^j$  we would get something that in general doesn't make sense, since the map  $g$  goes into  $M \amalg_f H^j$ , not just  $M$ , and  $H^i$  may no longer be attached at the boundary, leading to a space that is not even a manifold. The proposition instead says that there exist maps  $\tilde{g}$  and  $\tilde{f}$ , into  $M$  and  $M \amalg_{\tilde{g}} H^i$  respectively, such that  $(M \amalg_f H^j) \amalg_g H^i \cong (M \amalg_{\tilde{g}} H^i) \amalg_{\tilde{f}} H^j$ .

**Example 2.5.19.**

- $j = 1, i = 0$
- $j = 2, i = 1$  same picture but upside down!
- $j = i = 1$  do it as an exercise.

What happens if  $i > j$ ? In general it's not so simple, but if  $i = j + 1$  the following result holds.

**Proposition 2.5.20** (VI 7.4 in [Kos13], "Handle cancellation"). *Let  $\tilde{M} := (M \amalg_f H^j) \amalg_g H^{j+1}$ , where the attaching sphere of  $H^{j+1}$  intersects the belt sphere of  $H^j$  "transversely" in one point. Then  $\tilde{M} \cong M$ .*

**Example 2.5.21.**  $j = 0$

**Theorem 2.5.22** ([Hir76] 8.3.4, p. 187). *Let  $M$  be a surface admitting a Morse function that has exactly two critical points. Then*

$$M \cong S^2 \tag{2.13}$$

*Remark.* In dimension 1, 2 and 3 all the homeomorphic manifolds are also diffeomorphic.

*Proof.* Because of the remark it's enough to prove the homeomorphism, rather than the diffeomorphism.

Assume  $p_+, p_- \in M$  are critical points. Since  $M$  is compact, also  $f(M)$  is compact and therefore has a maximum and a minimum, which exactly correspond to the two critical points. Now assume  $p_+$  is the maximum, then  $\text{ind } p_+ = 2$ . Now, because of Morse Lemma I we have  $\exists U_+$  a neighborhood of  $p_+$  with coordinates  $x_1, x_2$  such that

$$f|_{U_+} = -x_1^2 - x_2^2 + f(p_+) \tag{2.14}$$

Then we have  $\exists b < f(p_+)$  such that  $D_+ = f^{-1}([b, +\infty)) \cong D^2$ .

Similarly,  $\exists U_-$  a neighborhood of  $p_-$  with coordinates  $x_1, x_2$  such that

$$f|_{U_-} = x_1^2 + x_2^2 + f(p_-) \tag{2.15}$$

and now we have  $\exists a > f(p_-)$  such that  $D_- = f^{-1}((-\infty, a]) \cong D^2$ .

Let  $B_+, B_-$  be disjoint caps around the poles of  $S^2$  and denote  $C := S^2 \text{int}(B_+ \amalg B_-) \cong S^1 \times [0, 1]$ . Now, notice  $\partial D_+ \cong S^1 \cong \partial D_-$  and we have a diffeomorphism  $h_0 : D_+ \rightarrow B_+$  as they are both diffeomorphic to  $D^2$ . In addition  $h_0|_{\partial D_+} : \partial D_+ \rightarrow \partial B_+$ . Notice that between  $[a, b]$  there are no critical values, that is  $f^{-1}([a, b])$  has no critical points. Now, using Morse Lemma II we get:

- $f^{-1}((-\infty, b]) =: M_b \hookrightarrow M_a := f^{-1}((-\infty, a]), f^{-1}(a) \cong f^{-1}(b)$
- $f^{-1}([a, b]) \cong f^{-1}(a) \times [0, 1] \cong S^1 \times [0, 1]$

Now we can extend  $h_0|_{\partial D_+}$  to  $h_1 : \partial D_+ \times [0, 1] \rightarrow \partial B_+ \times [0, 1]$ . Now we can glue  $h_0$  and  $h_1$

$$h : D_+ \cup (\partial D_+ \times [0, 1]) \rightarrow B_+ \cup (\partial B_+ \times [0, 1]) \tag{2.16}$$

**Claim.** If  $g : S^1 \rightarrow S^1$  is a homeomorphism, then it can be extended to a homeomorphism  $\tilde{g} : D^2 \rightarrow D^2$ .

$\tilde{g}$  can simply be defined as follows

$$\tilde{g}(x) = \begin{cases} \|x\|g\left(\frac{x}{\|x\|}\right), & \text{for } x \neq 0 \\ 0, & \text{for } x = 0 \end{cases} \tag{2.17}$$

From the claim  $h$  can be extended to a homeomorphism  $M \rightarrow S^2$ . □

*Remark.*

1. For any closed  $n$  manifold that has two critical points, we have  $M \cong S^n$  (*homeomorphic, not diffeomorphic*).
2. (From Milnor) There are manifolds  $M$  homeomorphic to a sphere but not diffeomorphic (e.g.  $S^7$ ), we then talk about *exotic spheres*.

**Theorem 2.5.23** (Classification of surfaces). *Let  $M^2$  be an oriented, connected, closed surface. Then it can be obtained as in the following drawing:*

*Proof.*

Step 1: Choose an admissible Morse function  $f$ .

Step 2a: If necessary, "perturb"  $f$  to get distinct critical values.

Step 2b: Chop into pieces with exactly one critical point and apply Morse Lemma I. We then get that  $f^{-1}((-\infty, a_i])$  is obtained from  $f^{-1}((-\infty, a_{i-1}])$  by attaching a handle.

Goal: normal form (for closed connected surfaces)

Step 3: Claim: We can obtain  $M$  by first attaching 0-handles, then 1-handles, ..., in ascending order.

To prove this there are two strategies:

1. Use proposition about handle cancellation (first attaching  $i$  handle and then  $i + 1$  handle these cancel) and handle slides: with these you can write down an algorithm to get the normal form from any handle decomposition.
2. One can change the Morse function. Claim: We can choose  $f$  such that if  $\text{ind } p_1 < \text{ind } p_2 \implies f(p_1) < f(p_2)$ . This can be proven by changing the Morse function locally around a critical point (see [Hir76] for more details).

Step 4: If  $\partial M = \emptyset$ , then either  $M = \emptyset$  or I have at least two critical points.

Case 1: We have exactly 2 critical points which gives us  $M \cong S^2$  because of Lemma.

Case 2: If we have  $> 2$  critical points, look at minimum, then there exist a neighborhood  $D_-$  of the minimum such that  $D_- \cong D^2$ , i.e. a 0 handle attached to  $\emptyset$  (because of Morse Lemma I  $f$  locally looks like a cup).

Starting from the minimum, attach one 0-handle. If then we attach another 0-handle, then we can use the handle slides and cancellations to get rid of all 0 handles but one.

Next we can attach one handles and we have two options, only one of which gives an orientable manifold.

At "end", same argument as for why only one 0-handle read backwards shows that we only have one 2-handle (for example change  $f$  to  $-f$ ).

This ends the proof. □

Question: What about the unoriented case? (*Hint: enough to have one attachment of Möbius strip*)

We now consider the case with boundary:

**Theorem 2.5.24** (Classification of surfaces with boundary). *Let  $M^2$  be an oriented, connected surface. Then it can be obtained as in the following drawing:*

*Proof.* Now  $\partial M \neq \emptyset$ , then  $\partial M = S^1 \amalg \dots \amalg S^1$ . If  $f$  is an admissible Morse function  $f$  onto  $[a, b]$  with  $f^{-1}(a) \cong (S^1)^{\amalg m}$  and  $f^{-1}(b) \cong (S^1)^{\amalg n}$ . Now one can prove that we need neither 0-handles (if  $m \neq 0$ ) nor 2-handles (if  $n \neq 0$ ). □

# Chapter 3

## Cobordism groups

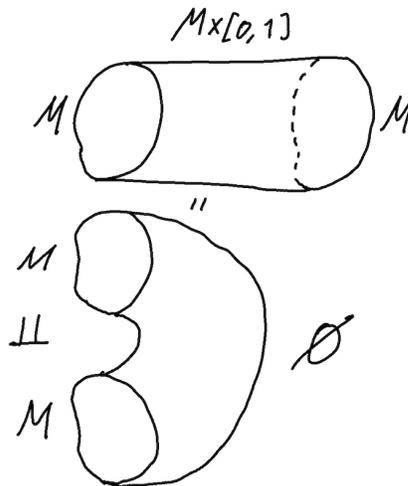
We now define the most fundamental object in cobordism theory: the cobordism group. It is an algebraic structure characterizing if two manifolds are cobordant and how this relates to the disjoint union of manifolds. From this one can establish cobordism invariants, i.e. homomorphisms from a certain cobordism group to another abelian group. To do this, we will exploit the classifications of 1- and 2-manifolds up to diffeomorphism we proved in the previous chapters. To be diffeomorphic is a much stricter and finer relation than being cobordant, that is why it is much harder to classify manifolds up to diffeomorphism, but it also will make our life much easier when establishing cobordism invariants.

**Definition 3.0.1.** The set underlying the  $n$ -th cobordism group is

$$\Omega_n = \frac{\{\text{closed } n \text{ manifolds}\}}{\{n + 1 \text{ cobordisms}\}}$$

$(\Omega_n, \amalg)$  is an abelian group with operation given by the disjoint union  $\amalg$ .

1. the disjoint union is associative and commutative
2. the identity element<sup>1</sup> is the cobordism class of the empty set<sup>2</sup>  $[\emptyset]$ , i.e. the set of  $n$ -manifolds which are bordant with the empty set
3. every element has an inverse:  $[M] \amalg [M] = [\emptyset]$  since  $M \amalg M = (\partial(M \times [0, 1]))$  and such a cylinder can be bent into a macaroni, which is bordant to the empty set:



<sup>1</sup>We will sometimes write  $0 = [\emptyset]$  or more often  $\emptyset = [\emptyset]$

<sup>2</sup>Reminder:  $\emptyset$  is an  $n$ -manifold for every  $n$ .

*Remark.* There is an insidious set-theoretic issue when we define the  $n$ -th cobordism group  $\Omega_n$  (3.0.1): is the collection of all closed  $n$ -manifolds a set? And what about the collection of all  $(n + 1)$ -bordisms? It could be the case that it is something bigger than a usual set, thus not a set and problematic since we would not know how to treat them<sup>3</sup>. For example, we know that the collection of all sets is strictly greater than any set<sup>4</sup> and thus not a set. Similarly, also the collection of topological spaces is not a set because we can regard any set as a topological space via the discrete topology<sup>5</sup>. One could wonder if the collection of all manifolds of a certain dimension  $n$  is likewise not a set. This is fortunately for us not the case. The following theorem allows us to happily treat {closed  $n$  manifolds} and { $n + 1$  cobordisms} as sets by replacing abstract manifolds and cobordism by manifolds and cobordisms embedded in  $\mathbb{R}^\infty$ .

**Theorem 3.0.2** (Whitney Embedding theorem<sup>6</sup>). *Any  $n$  manifold can be embedded in  $\mathbb{R}^\infty (= \bigcup_{n \in \mathbb{N}} \mathbb{R}^n)$ . The space of such embeddings is contractible.<sup>7</sup>*

*Remark.* Actually  $(\Omega_n, \mathbb{I})$  is a finitely generated abelian group, but this is a hard theorem. In particular, it is a finite product of cyclic groups of order 2 (from 2.)

**Definition 3.0.3** (Bordism invariant). A bordism invariant is a homomorphism of abelian groups

$$(\Omega_n, \mathbb{I}, \emptyset) \rightarrow (A, \cdot, e)$$

the abelian group  $A$  can be  $\mathbb{Z}$ ,  $\mathbb{R}$  or  $\mathbb{C}$  for instance.

*Remark.* Many important manifold invariants are also bordism invariants.

**Example 3.0.4.**

- $\chi \bmod 2$  (the Euler characteristic)
- signature
- characteristic classes such as Pontrjagin, Stiefel-Whitney or Chern classes

### 3.1 The 0-th Cobordism Group, $\Omega_0$

Consider

$$\Omega_0 = \{\text{finite disjoint unions of points}\} / \{\text{1-dimensional cobordisms}\}.$$

To compute this, consider the following classification of 1 manifolds:

**Proposition 3.1.1.** *Any 1 dimensional compact manifold with boundary is diffeomorphic to a finite disjoint union of closed intervals  $[0, 1]$  and circles  $S^1$ .*

<sup>3</sup>We are assuming to be working in ZFC. There are other set theories in which one can define collections greater than sets, e.g. Von Neumann–Bernays–Gödel set theory.

<sup>4</sup>Because of famous set-theoretic paradoxes like Cantor's paradox.

<sup>5</sup>The topology where the set of open sets is the powerset of the set in question, or in other words where any subset is open.

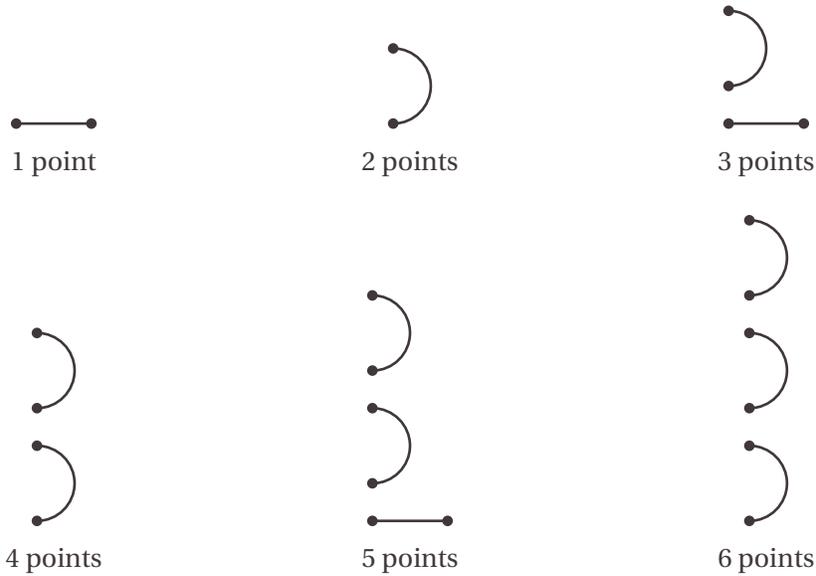
<sup>6</sup>This result is not important only in this case, but notably for the interest of this class it was used to construct an apt category of bordisms in order to sketch a partial proof of the most important conjecture in the field of TFTs: the cobordism hypothesis; see for details on this [Lur09] and [CS19].

<sup>7</sup>Note that there are refinements of the latter result.

**Example 3.1.2.** An example of a 1-dimensional cobordism is  $W = [0, 1]$ . Here are the 3 different way of seeing it as a bordism: from  $Y_0 = \{0, 1\}$  to  $Y_1 = \emptyset$ , from  $Y_0 = \{0\}$  to  $Y_1 = \{1\}$  and from  $Y_0 = \emptyset$  to  $Y_1 = \{0, 1\}$ .



**Example 3.1.3.** Here is a list of various finite disjoint unions of points with different cardinalities. Can you see a pattern emerging?



Keeping this pattern in mind, consider collection of  $k$  points, with  $k$  finite (i.e. the only closed 0 manifolds):

- If  $k$  is even, we can find a bordism to  $\emptyset$
- If  $k$  is odd, we can find a bordism to  $\{*\}$

We then have

$$2k \text{ points} \sim \emptyset, \quad 2k + 1 \text{ points} \sim 1 \text{ point}$$

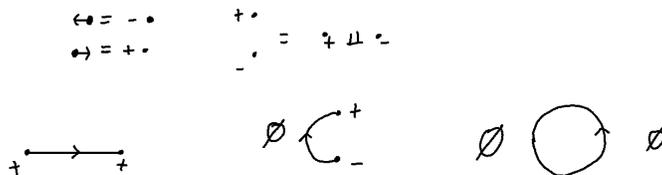
Therefore, the 0-th cobordism group is given by

$$\Omega_0 = \{\emptyset, \{*\}\} \cong \mathbb{Z}_2. \tag{3.1}$$

A possible variation is: add a “decoration”, called *orientation* (will be made more precise later), so we now have:

$$\Omega_0^{or} = \{\text{finite sets of points } S \text{ with a map } S \rightarrow \{+, -\} / \{\text{oriented cobordism}\}$$

An oriented cobordism in 1 dimension is given by  $[0, 1]$  or  $S^1$  which comes with an orientation. Here are some examples



**Exercise 3.1.4.** What is  $\Omega_0^{gr}$ ? Try to think about it!

### 3.1.1 The 1st cobordism group, $\Omega_1$

Now we have

$$\Omega_1 = \{\text{closed 1-dimensional manifolds}\} / \{\text{2-dimensional cobordisms}\}.$$

In studying this group, the following result, which is a restriction of 3.1.1:

**Theorem 3.1.5.** *Any closed 1-dimensional manifold is a finite disjoint union of circles*

However, a circle is the boundary of a 2-disk, which gives a cobordism from  $S^1$  to  $\emptyset$ , we then have  $S^1 \sim \emptyset$ . Hence, also finite disjoint unions of  $S^1$  are cobordant to the empty set. Therefore, the 1st cobordism group is trivial:

$$\Omega_1 = 0 \tag{3.2}$$

### 3.2 The 2nd cobordism group, $\Omega_2$

In order to find the 2nd cobordism group, we first need a classification of 2 manifolds.

**Proposition 3.2.1** (Classification of 2-dimensional manifolds). *Every connected closed 2 manifold is diffeomorphic to*

1.  $S^2$ , orientable

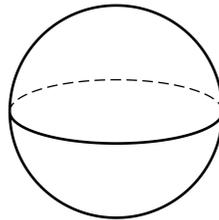


Figure 3.2: 2-sphere,  $S^2$

2.  $\Sigma_g = \underbrace{T \# \dots \# T}_{g\text{-times}}$ , orientable

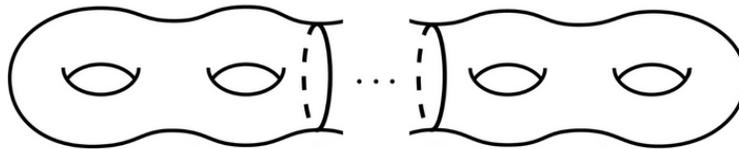
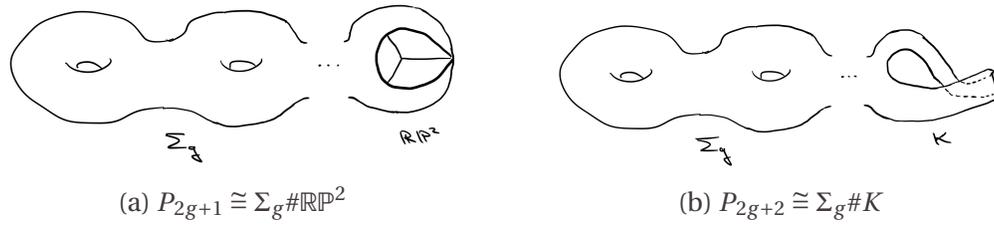


Figure 3.3: Surface of genus  $g$ ,  $\Sigma_g$

3.  $P_k = \underbrace{\mathbb{R}P^2 \# \dots \# \mathbb{R}P^2}_{k\text{-times}}$ , non-orientable



We can now use this knowledge to compute

$$\Omega_2^{or} = \{\text{closed oriented 2 manifolds}\} / \{\text{3-dimensional oriented cobordisms}\}$$

by observing that  $S^2$  and  $\Sigma_g$  are both cobordant to  $\emptyset$  since they can simply be “filled” to a 3 dimensional manifold with boundary, we get

$$\Omega_2^{or} = 0. \tag{3.3}$$

**Exercise 3.2.2.** What about the non-oriented part  $\Omega_2$ ?

### 3.3 More on cobordism groups

We now go back to cobordism groups to give some important results.

We had found

$$\Omega_0 \cong \mathbb{Z}_2 \tag{3.4}$$

$$\Omega_1 \cong 0 \tag{3.5}$$

$$\Omega_2 \cong \mathbb{Z}_2 \tag{3.6}$$

while for the oriented case we have

$$\Omega_0^{or} \cong \mathbb{Z} \tag{3.7}$$

$$\Omega_1^{or} \cong 0 \tag{3.8}$$

$$\Omega_2^{or} \cong 0 \tag{3.9}$$

**Definition 3.3.1** (Commutative  $\mathbb{Z}$ -Graded Ring<sup>8</sup>). A commutative  $\mathbb{Z}$ -graded ring is a ring  $R$  if there is a family of subgroups  $\{R_n\}_{n \in \mathbb{Z}}$  such that

- the underlying abelian group can be decomposed as  $R = \bigoplus_{n \in \mathbb{Z}} R_n$
- $R_n \cdot R_k \subset R_{n+k}$  for all  $n, k \in \mathbb{Z}$

A non-zero element  $x \in R_n$  is called a homogeneous element of  $R$  of degree  $n$ .

**Proposition 3.3.2.**  $(\Omega, = \bigoplus_{n \geq 0} \Omega_n, \Pi, \times)$  is a commutative  $\mathbb{Z}$ -graded ring.

*Proof.* Firstly we need to check that the product respects the degree: this is true because  $M^m \times N^n = (M \times N)^{m+n}$ , so  $[M \times N] \in \Omega_{m+n}$ .

Then the products descends to equivalence classes: if  $Y_0 \simeq Y_1$  are cobordant via cobordism  $(X, p)$  ( $p : \partial X \rightarrow \{0, 1\}$ ),  $M$  any manifold, then  $\partial X \times M = \partial X \times M \xrightarrow{p \circ pr_X} \{0, 1\}$ . Therefore  $(X \times M, p \circ pr_X)$  is a cobordism from  $Y_0 \times M$  to  $Y_1 \times M$ .  $\square$

<sup>8</sup>Note that there is a difference between commutative graded ring and graded commutative ring! A commutative graded ring is a commutative ring that is graded (our notion), a graded commutative ring is a different notion that depends on the degree of homogeneous elements.

**Theorem 3.3.3** (Thom). *There is an isomorphism of  $\mathbb{Z}$ -graded commutative rings*

$$\Omega_{\bullet} \cong \mathbb{Z}_2[x_2, x_4, x_5, x_6, x_8, \dots], \text{ with } \deg x_k = k, k \neq 2^i - 1 \quad (3.10)$$

and the generators of the even degrees are given by  $x_{2k} = [\mathbb{R}\mathbb{P}^{2k}]$ .

*Remark.* Note that  $(\deg x_2)^2 = \deg 4$  so maybe we could imagine that  $\mathbb{R}\mathbb{P}^2 \times \mathbb{R}\mathbb{P}^2 \sim \mathbb{R}\mathbb{P}^4$  however that's not true since  $x_2^2 \neq x_4$ .

There are versions for any tangential structure, such as orientation or stable framing.

**Theorem 3.3.4.** *There is an isomorphism of  $\mathbb{Z}$  graded commutative rings:*

$$\begin{aligned} \Omega_{\bullet}^{or} \otimes \mathbb{Q} &\cong \mathbb{Q}[y_4, y_8, y_{12}, \dots] \\ y_{4k} &\mapsto [\mathbb{C}\mathbb{P}^{2k}] \end{aligned}$$

We write it in this way because in this case there is nontrivial torsion. We could also write

$$\Omega_{\bullet}^{or} / \text{torsion} \cong \mathbb{Z}[z_4, z_8, z_{12}, \dots]$$

where the generators are given by Milnor hypersurfaces.

**Example 3.3.5.** In particular, the groups in various degrees are given by the following list:

$$\begin{aligned} \Omega_0^{or} &= \mathbb{Z} \\ \Omega_1^{or} &= 0 \\ \Omega_2^{or} &= 0 \\ \Omega_3^{or} &= 0 \\ \Omega_4^{or} &= \mathbb{Z} \\ \Omega_5^{or} &= \mathbb{Z}_2 \\ \Omega_6^{or} &= 0 \\ \Omega_7^{or} &= 0 \\ \Omega_8^{or} &= \mathbb{Z} \oplus \mathbb{Z} \\ \Omega_{n \geq 9}^{or} &\neq 0 \end{aligned}$$

For the last result see [MS05, p. 203].

### 3.4 Cobordism theory and stable homotopy theory

When establishing bordism invariants, we cheated and relied on stronger classification theorems. However, the intuition of cobordism theory is that is much easier to classify manifolds up to cobordism then up to diffeomorphism. The natural question is: how? Thom's brilliant idea in his PhD thesis is to reduce such problem to a problem in stable homotopy theory. This is very convenient because stable homotopy theory is much easier than ordinary differential topology. His strategy was to first define the Thom spectrum, i.e. roughly a spectrum for cobordisms, and then establish an isomorphism between the homotopy groups of this spectrum and the cobordism ring via the Pontryagin-Thom construction.

In this section we sketch how this works.  **THIS IS WORK IN PROGRESS**

### 3.4.1 Cobordism groups and the sphere spectrum

Very interestingly, the (stable) framed version is isomorphic to the stable homotopy groups of the sphere and it is *not* computed to all degrees. This is one way to phrase a theorem named after Thom. It is fascinating because the stable homotopy groups of the sphere are central objects in stable homotopy theory. They are equivalently the homotopy groups of the sphere spectrum.

Now characterize spectra the bare minimum in order to talk about the sphere spectrum. Later, after some detours in the magical world of  $\infty$ -categories, we will give a more comprehensive sketch of what they are B.

**Definition 3.4.1** (Suspension). Let  $X$  be a pointed topological space. The suspension  $\Sigma X$  of  $X$  is the smash product of  $X$  with  $S^1$ , i.e.

$$\Sigma X = X \wedge S^1 = \frac{X \times S^1}{(\{*\} \times S^1) \amalg X \times \{1\}}$$

**Example 3.4.2.**  $\Sigma(S^1) = S^2$  more generally  $\Sigma(S^n) = S^{n+1}$

**Definition 3.4.3** (Prespectrum<sup>9</sup>). A prespectrum is a sequence of pointed spaces  $\{X_k\}_{k \in \mathbb{Z}}$  with maps preserving basepoints  $\Sigma X_n \xrightarrow{\sigma_n} X_{n+1}$  called structure maps.

**Definition 3.4.4** (Suspension Spectrum). The suspension spectrum  $\Sigma^\infty X$  has  $\Sigma_n$  as the  $n$ -th space in the sequence and structure maps  $\Sigma \Sigma_n \cong \Sigma_{n+1}$ .

**Example 3.4.5** (Sphere Spectrum). The sphere spectrum  $\mathbb{S}$  is the suspension spectrum of the point,  $S^0$ . In fact,  $\Sigma S^0 = S^1$ ,  $\Sigma^2 S^0 = \Sigma \Sigma S^0 = \Sigma S^1 = S^2$  and in general  $\Sigma^n S^0 = S^n$

**Notation** (Stable Homotopy Groups of the Sphere). The stable homotopy groups of the sphere are the homotopy groups of the sphere spectrum. Alternatively, one can define them as the homotopy groups of the sphere  $\pi_{n+i}(S^n)$  such that  $n > i + 1$ . This latter characterization explains why they are called 'stable': due to Freudenthal's suspension theorem, such homotopy groups are independent of  $n$ .

*Remark.* Note that the stable homotopy groups of the sphere can be made into a commutative  $\mathbb{Z}$ -graded ring via direct sums. We denote it with  $\pi_\bullet(\mathbb{S})$

$$\pi_\bullet(\mathbb{S}) = \bigoplus_{n \geq 0} \pi_n(\mathbb{S})$$

**Theorem 3.4.6** (Thom's theorem). *One way of phrasing Thom's theorem is*

$$\Omega_\bullet^{\text{fr}} \cong \pi_\bullet(\mathbb{S})$$

*This is also called Pontrjagin-Thom isomorphism.*

**Example 3.4.7.** We list some examples of such commutative rings.

$$\Omega_0^{\text{fr}} \cong \mathbb{Z}$$

---

<sup>9</sup>In older literature it is called just spectrum, or sometimes it is called sequential spectrum. We call it *prespectrum* in order to distinguish it from other notions with more structure, such as the suspension spectrum

$$\Omega_1^{fr} \cong \mathbb{Z}_2$$

$$\Omega_2^{fr} \cong \mathbb{Z}_2$$

$$\Omega_3^{fr} \cong \mathbb{Z}_{24}$$

$$\Omega_4^{fr} \cong 0$$

$$\Omega_5^{fr} \cong 0$$

$$\Omega_6^{fr} \cong \mathbb{Z}_2$$

$$\Omega_7^{fr} \cong \mathbb{Z}_{240},$$

$$\Omega_1^{fr} 1 \cong \mathbb{Z}_{504}$$

$$\Omega_1^{fr} 5 \cong \mathbb{Z}_{480} \oplus \mathbb{Z}_2$$

## **Part II**

# **Topological field theories**

# Preamble: a modern perspective on cobordisms

A bordism invariant was characterized as a homomorphism from the cobordism group to some other abelian group. To extract the cobordism group from bordism we took the following steps:

1. observed that being cobordant is an equivalence relation,
2. considered the equivalence classes of closed  $n$  manifolds up to  $n + 1$  cobordisms, obtaining the sets  $\Omega_n$ ,
3. took such equivalence classes together with disjoint unions, resulting in an abelian group<sup>10</sup>.

This strategy was the key for classifying manifolds up to cobordism. However, the cobordism groups merely record that *there is* a bordism between two manifolds (since two manifolds are equivalent just if there is a bordism, independently of what kind of bordism it is), thereby forgetting other properties of the bordism itself. We switch now perspective and analyze a more sophisticated structure remembering how two manifolds are cobordant, e.g. indicating the manifold that bounds them and the direction of the bordism: the symmetric monoidal category  $\text{Bord}_{n,n-1}$  where objects are  $(n - 1)$  manifolds and morphisms are  $n$ -cobordisms. This is an instance of a process called categorification<sup>11</sup>: adding categorical structure to things, e.g.<sup>12</sup> passing from set-theoretic notions like set or function categorical ones like category or functor. The invariants will become in turn functors from  $\text{Bord}_{n,n-1}$  to categories of algebraic nature like  $\text{Vect}_k$ , the category of vector spaces on a field  $k$ . Such categorified cobordism invariants are exactly topological field theories (TFTs).

The following table summarizes the comparison between additional structures in the two perspectives:

$\Omega_n$	$\text{Bord}_{n,n-1}$
set	category
monoid	monoidal category
commutative monoid	symmetric monoidal category
abelian group	Picard groupoid

<sup>10</sup>And eventually in a  $\mathbb{Z}$  graded commutative ring, but this will not be as important for us from now on.

<sup>11</sup>Sometimes, e.g. in the nLab, also called vertical categorification.

<sup>12</sup>Note that although this way of categorifying is the most prominent one, it is strictly speaking not the only way to categorify, one could also go from category theory to higher category theory.

Analogous to the comparison between the set-theoretic and category-theoretic perspective, we could also have a linear-algebraic perspective. Since an associative algebra on a vector space is the parallel construction to a monoid with set, and a commutative algebra corresponds to a commutative monoid. The following table adds this perspective.

$\Omega_n$	$\text{Vect}_k$
set	vector space
monoid	associative algebra
commutative monoid	commutative algebra

We make both these comparisons more rigorous by later (4.7.2) showing that

1. a monoid is a monoid object in the category of sets.
2. an associative algebra is a monoid object in the category of  $k$ -vector spaces  $\text{Vect}_k$
3. a (*strict*) monoidal category is a monoid object in the category of small categories  $\text{Cat}$

The same holds for the commutative case, commutative monoids, commutative algebras and (*strict*<sup>13</sup>) symmetric monoidal categories are all examples of commutative monoid objects (see 4.8.5).

---

<sup>13</sup>We will also sketch a way how to get general symmetric monoidal categories, i.e. not necessarily strict, in an analogous way. See 4.8.1.

# Chapter 4

## A summary of category theory

### 4.1 Category theory: basic definitions

**Definition 4.1.1.** A locally small<sup>1</sup> category  $\mathcal{C}$  consists of the following data:

- A class  $\text{ob}(\mathcal{C})$  whose elements are called the objects of  $\mathcal{C}$ ,
- For any  $X, Y \in \text{ob}(\mathcal{C})$  a set  $\text{Hom}_{\mathcal{C}}(X, Y)$  whose elements are called morphisms from  $X$  to  $Y$ ,
- For any objects  $X, Y, Z \in \text{ob}(\mathcal{C})$  a map<sup>2</sup>

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{C}}(Y, Z) \times \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{C}}(X, Y) &\xrightarrow{\circ} \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{C}}(X, Z) \\ (g, f) &\mapsto g \circ f \end{aligned}$$

which is called composition of morphisms,

- For every object  $X \in \text{ob}(\mathcal{C})$  an element  $id_X \in \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{C}}(X, X)$  called the identity of  $X$ .

Such data must fulfill the following axioms:

$$\bullet \forall f \in \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{C}}(X, Y), f \circ id_X = f = id_Y \circ f \quad (\text{unitality})$$

$$\bullet \forall f \in \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{C}}(X, Y), g \in \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{C}}(Y, Z), h \in \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{C}}(W, Z):$$

$$(h \circ g) \circ f = h \circ (g \circ f) \quad (\text{associativity})$$

**Example 4.1.2.** A few examples of categories are the following:

---

<sup>1</sup>A category is locally small if every hom  $\text{Hom}_{\mathcal{C}}(X, Y)$  is not bigger than a set. A locally small category is small if the collection of objects is also a set. A large category is a category which is not small. A category is essentially small if it is locally small and the collection of isomorphism classes (collections of isomorphic objects, i.e. objects with a morphism between them which has a left- and right-inverse) is a set. Questions of size of collections play an important role in category theory. For example, one cannot naively take the set of all sets as the collection of objects of the category of sets because of famous set-theoretic paradoxes like Cantor's, Burali-Forti's or Russell's. See [Shu08] for an account on possible set-theoretic foundations for category theory.

<sup>2</sup>Note that we can simply define composition as a map between sets because we are working with a locally small category.

category	objects	morphisms
Set	class of all sets	functions between sets
Mon	class of all monoids	monoid homomorphisms
Grp	class of all groups	group homomorphisms
AbGrp	class of all abelian groups	group homomorphisms
Ring	class of all rings	ring homomorphisms
Vect <sub>k</sub>	class of all $k$ vector spaces	linear maps
Alg <sub>k</sub>	class of all algebras over $k$	algebra homomorphisms
Top	class of all topological spaces	continuous functions
FinSet	class of all finite sets	functions between sets
SmoothMfld	set of all smooth manifolds	smooth functions

1. Let  $(P, \leq)$  be a set with a transitive and reflexive relation  $\leq$  (a preordered set). Define a category  $\mathbf{P}$  with:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{ob}(\mathbf{P}) &= P \\ \text{Hom}_{\mathbf{P}}(X, Y) &= \begin{cases} \{*\} & \text{if } x \leq y \\ \emptyset & \text{else} \end{cases} \end{aligned}$$

2. Given categories  $\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{D}$  we can define a category  $\mathcal{C} \times \mathcal{D}$  (the product category) by:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{ob}(\mathcal{C} \times \mathcal{D}) &= \text{ob}(\mathcal{C}) \times \text{ob}(\mathcal{D}) \\ \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{C} \times \mathcal{D}}((X, Y), (X', Y')) &= \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{C}}(X, X') \times \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}}(Y, Y') \end{aligned}$$

3. Given a category  $\mathcal{C}$ , define a category  $\mathcal{C}^{op}$  by:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{ob}(\mathcal{C}^{op}) &= \text{ob}(\mathcal{C}) \\ \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{C}^{op}}(X, Y) &= \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{C}}(Y, X) \\ g \circ_{\mathcal{C}^{op}} f &= f \circ_{\mathcal{C}} g \end{aligned}$$

this is called the opposite category of  $\mathcal{C}$ .

**Definition 4.1.3.** An isomorphism  $f \in \text{Hom}(X, Y)$  is a morphism such that  $\exists g \in \text{Hom}(Y, X)$  with  $g \circ f = id_X, f \circ g = id_Y$ .

**Definition 4.1.4.** A groupoid is a category where each morphism is an isomorphism.

**Example 4.1.5.** Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a category with  $\text{ob}(\mathcal{C}) = \{*\}$ .

Then,  $(\text{Hom}_{\mathcal{C}}(*, *), \circ)$  is a monoid since composition is associative and unital with neutral element given by the identity morphism  $id_*$ . Conversely, every monoid  $(M, \cdot)$  defines a category  $\mathbf{BM}$  with

$$\text{ob}(\mathbf{BM}) = \{*\}, \text{Hom}_{\mathbf{BM}}(*, *) = M, m \circ_{\mathbf{BM}} m' = m \cdot m', id_* = 1_M$$

$\mathbf{BM}$  is called the delooping of the monoid  $(M, \cdot)$ <sup>3</sup>. The same holds for groups and one-object groupoids: every group  $(G, \cdot)$  defines a one-object groupoid  $\mathbf{BG}$  and vice versa

More generally, monoids of the form  $(\text{Hom}_{\mathcal{C}}(X, X), \circ)$  are called endomorphism monoids and an interesting example thereof is endomorphism monoids in the category  $\text{TopVect}_k$  of topological vector spaces and continuous linear operators. Such endomorphism monoids  $(\text{Hom}_{\text{TopVect}_k}(X, X), \circ)$  and submonoids thereof are called operator algebras. They are important in functional analysis and in quantum theory.

<sup>3</sup>We will see a generalization of such deloopings for certain categories, monoidal categories (see 4.6) where any monoidal category  $\mathcal{C}$ , will be a one-object bicategory  $\mathbf{BC}$  called the delooping  $\mathcal{C}$  (see 4.8.31).

**Definition 4.1.6.** Let  $\mathcal{C}$  and  $\mathcal{D}$  be categories. A functor  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  consists of the following data:

- an assignment

$$F : \text{ob}(\mathcal{C}) \rightarrow \text{ob}(\mathcal{D}) \quad (4.1)$$

$$X \mapsto F(X) \quad (4.2)$$

- for every two objects  $X, Y \in \text{ob}(\mathcal{C})$  a map

$$\text{Hom}_{\mathcal{C}}(X, Y) \rightarrow \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}}(F(X), F(Y)) \quad (4.3)$$

$$f \mapsto F(f) \quad (4.4)$$

such that

- $F(id_X) = id_{F(X)}$
- $F(g \circ f) = F(g) \circ F(f)$

**Example 4.1.7.** Some examples of functors:

1. There are forgetful functors

- $\text{Ring} \rightarrow \text{Grp} \rightarrow \text{Set}$

$$(R, +, \cdot) \mapsto (R, +) \mapsto R$$

- $\text{Ring} \rightarrow \text{Mon}$

$$(R, +, \cdot) \mapsto (R, \cdot)$$

- $\text{Vect}_k \rightarrow \text{AbGrp} \rightarrow \text{Set}$

- $\text{Alg}_k \rightarrow \text{Vect}_k$  where the multiplicative structure on algebras is forgotten

2. An action of a group  $(G, \cdot)$  on a set  $X$  is a functor  $A : \mathbf{BG} \xrightarrow{\rho} \text{Set}$  where  $A(*) = X$  and every  $g \in \text{Hom}_{\mathbf{BG}}(*, *)$  is mapped to an automorphism<sup>4</sup> on  $X$ ,  $\text{Hom}_{\mathbf{BG}}(*, *) \rightarrow \text{Hom}_{\text{Set}}(X, X)$ . By the same reasoning, a linear representation of a group  $(G, \cdot)$  is a functor  $\mathbf{BG} \rightarrow \text{Vect}_k$ .

3. Given functors  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  and  $G : \mathcal{D} \rightarrow \mathcal{E}$ , their composite  $G \circ F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{E}$  is also a functor:  $G \circ F(X) = G(F(X))$ ,  $G \circ F(f) = G(F(f))$ .

4.  $id_{\mathcal{C}} : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  with  $id_{\mathcal{C}}(X) = X$ ,  $id_{\mathcal{C}}(f) = f$  is also a functor.

*Remark.* Since the composition of functors is associative<sup>5</sup> and unital there is a category of all (small<sup>6</sup>) categories  $\text{Cat}$  whose objects are (small) categories and whose morphisms are functors. For the same reason we also have a category  $\text{Gpd}$  of (small) groupoids.

<sup>4</sup>It is an automorphism and not a simple endomorphism because of a very important property of functors: they preserve isomorphisms: given a functor  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$ , if  $f \in \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{C}}(X, Y)$  is an isomorphism, then  $F(f) \in \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}}(F(X), F(Y))$  is an isomorphism as well because  $F(f^{-1}) \circ F(f) = F(f^{-1} \circ f) = F(id_X) = id_{F(X)}$  and symmetrically,  $F(f) \circ F(f^{-1}) = id_{F(Y)}$ . For example, this can be used in the converse direction to show that two topological spaces are not homeomorphic by sending them (with a functor) to their non-isomorphic fundamental group(oid)s.

<sup>5</sup>Try to convince yourself that it is so!

<sup>6</sup>Let  $\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{D}$  be categories, the collection of all functors  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  is generally a class. Hence the category of all categories without any restriction would not be a locally small category and thereby not a category according to our definition 4.1.1. However, if  $\mathcal{C}$  is small, then the collection of all functors  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  is a set. Therefore, the category of all small categories is indeed a category according to our definition of category.

**Example 4.1.8.** ✈ Some more examples related to topological spaces.

1. Let  $X$  be a topological space. Observe the following equivalence relation:  $x \sim x'$  if and only if there is a continuous map  $f : [0, 1] \rightarrow X$ , also known as "path", such that  $f(0) = x$  and  $f(1) = x'$ . Denote with  $\pi_0(X)$  the set of equivalence classes of path-connected points, also known as the set of path-connected components, in  $X$ . This gives a functor<sup>7</sup>  $\pi_0 : \text{Top} \rightarrow \text{Set}$
2. Let  $X$  be a topological space. Its fundamental groupoid  $\pi_{\leq 1}$  is the groupoid having:
  - the points of  $X$  as objects,  $\text{ob}(\pi_{\leq 1}(X)) = X$ ;
  - $\text{Hom}_{\pi_{\leq 1}(X)}(x, y)$  is given by equivalence classes of continuous paths from  $x$  to  $y$  that are homotopic<sup>8</sup> relative to their endpoints. We can spell out what this means in the following way

$$\text{Hom}_{\pi_{\leq 1}(X)}(x, y) = \frac{\{\gamma \in \text{Hom}_{\text{Top}}([0, 1], X) \mid \gamma(0) = x, \gamma(1) = y\}}{\text{homotopy relative to } \partial[0, 1]}$$

- For  $x, y, z \in X$ , composition of  $[\gamma] \in \text{Hom}_{\pi_{\leq 1}(X)}(x, y)$  and  $[\eta] \in \text{Hom}_{\pi_{\leq 1}(X)}(y, z)$  is given by the concatenation of paths with appropriate reparametrization,

$$[\eta] \circ [\gamma] = [\gamma * \eta]$$

Units are constant paths, i.e.  $c : [0, 1] \rightarrow X$  such that  $\forall t \in [0, 1], c(t) = x$ . Additionally, this is indeed a groupoid since inverses are given by the same paths run in the opposite direction. We have a functor

$$\pi_{\leq 1} : \text{Top} \rightarrow \text{Gpd}.$$

In this language, the Seifert–Van Kampen theorem can be formulated as follows:  $\pi_{\leq 1}$  preserves pushouts<sup>9</sup>.

3. Let  $X$  be a topological space and  $x \in X$  an arbitrary basepoint. The assignment of a fundamental group of  $X$  at  $x$ ,  $\pi_1(X, x)$ <sup>10</sup> is a functor  $\pi_1 : \text{Top} \rightarrow \text{Grp}$

## 4.2 Natural transformations

**Definition 4.2.1.** Given two functors  $F, G : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  a natural transformation from  $F$  to  $G$ ,  $\alpha : F \Rightarrow G$  is a collection of morphisms indexed by objects in  $\mathcal{C}$ ,  $\alpha_x : F(X) \rightarrow G(X)$  such that  $\forall f : X \rightarrow Y$  in  $\mathcal{C}$  the following diagram commutes

$$\begin{array}{ccc} F(X) & \xrightarrow{\alpha_x} & G(X) \\ F(f) \downarrow & & \downarrow G(f) \\ F(Y) & \xrightarrow{\alpha_y} & G(Y) \end{array}$$

<sup>7</sup>There is also a functor  $\pi : \text{Top} \rightarrow \text{Set}$  sending topological spaces to the sets of their connected components.

<sup>8</sup>We later define a homotopy, see Example 3 below.

<sup>9</sup>Pushouts are certain colimits, that is objects in a category defined, up to isomorphism, by a certain universal property, see B for a fast paced introduction to co/limits. An example of pushout is the gluing of two spaces along a common other, as we have already seen numerous times in this course. The resulting space is a pushout in  $\text{Top}$

<sup>10</sup>Reminder:  $\pi_1(X, x) = \pi_0(\Omega_x(X))$ , where  $\Omega_x(X)$  is the based loop space of  $X$  at  $x$

If for every  $X \in \text{ob}(\mathcal{C})$ ,  $\alpha_X$  is an isomorphism, then  $\alpha$  is a natural isomorphism.

*Remark.* Note that because of functoriality, if a diagram commutes in  $\mathcal{C}$ , then its image under a functor  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  also commutes in  $\mathcal{D}$ . Let for example  $g \circ f = h \circ l$ , then  $F(g) \circ F(f) = F(g \circ f) = F(h \circ l) = F(h) \circ F(l)$

**Notation.** Let  $\mathcal{C}$  and  $\mathcal{D}$  be categories. We denote with  $\text{Fun}(\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{D})$  the functor category where objects are functors  $\mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  and morphisms are natural transformations between such functors. We encounter soon an example of functor category, the category of  $G$ -linear representations, see Example 1 below.

*Remark.* Note that given a category  $\mathcal{C}$  and a *groupoid*  $\mathcal{D}$ , then  $\text{Fun}(\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{D})$  is a groupoid since every component of any natural transformation is invertible because they are morphisms in  $\mathcal{D}$  and therefore any natural transformation is a natural isomorphism.

**Example 4.2.2.**

1. As we have seen in Example 2 in 4.1.7, a linear representation of a group  $G$  is a functor  $\mathbf{B}G \rightarrow \text{Vect}_k$ . A morphism between  $G$ -representations  $V$  and  $W$ ,  $f : V \rightarrow W$  is a  $k$ -linear map which is equivariant, i.e.  $\forall g \in G, \forall v \in V$  we have  $f(gv) = gf(v)$ . Since linear representations are functors, one might wonder if a morphism between functors  $V, W : \mathbf{B}G \rightarrow \text{Vect}_k$ , i.e. a natural transformation, is an equivariant map. Let  $f : V \Rightarrow W$  be a natural transformation. Then, for any  $g \in \text{Hom}_{\mathbf{B}G}(*, *)$  the following diagram commutes

$$\begin{array}{ccc} V(*) & \xrightarrow{f(*)} & W(*) \\ V(g)=g \cdot \downarrow & & \downarrow W(g)=g \cdot \\ V(*) & \xrightarrow{f(*)} & W(*) \end{array}$$

and hence the map is equivariant, it does not matter if we first act on the vector space and subsequently apply the map or viceversa.

Since one can compose unitaly and associatively natural transformations<sup>11</sup>, if we take the collection of all functors  $\mathbf{B}G \rightarrow \text{Vect}_k$  and the natural transformations between them we get the category of linear representations of the group  $G$ . Such categories where the objects are functors are called functor categories.

2. The determinant can also be seen as a natural transformation. Let  $\text{Mat}$  be the functor  $\text{Ring} \rightarrow \text{Mon}$  taking a commutative ring  $R$  to the monoid  $\text{Mat}(R)$  of matrices with coefficients in the ring  $R$ . Another such functor is the forgetful functor which forgets addition in the ring and forgets that the product is commutative  $U : \text{Ring} \rightarrow \text{Mon}$ . The determinant is then the following map of monoids:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \text{Mat}(R) & \xrightarrow{\det} & R \\ M & \longmapsto & \det M \end{array} \tag{4.5}$$

The product rule for the determinant makes the map into a monoid homomorphism. The naturality diagram for rings  $R, S$  for a map  $f : R \rightarrow S$  is then the following:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \text{Mat}(R) & \xrightarrow{\det} & R \\ \text{Mat}(f) \downarrow & & \downarrow f \\ \text{Mat}(S) & \xrightarrow{\det} & S \end{array} \tag{4.6}$$

---

<sup>11</sup>By composining their components.

In words, this means that to calculate the determinant with coefficients in  $S$  we can proceed in two equivalent ways:

- change coefficients from  $R$  to  $S$  and then calculate the determinant,
- calculate the determinant using the matrix with  $R$  coefficients and then map into  $S$ .

Instead of taking *all* matrices we could take the general linear group  $GL(-) : \text{Ring} \rightarrow \text{Grp}$ . In that case  $\det$  is a natural transformation between  $GL(-)$  and the functor  $(-)^{\times} : \text{Ring} \rightarrow \text{Grp}$  taking the units in the ring.

3. Let  $X, Y \in \text{Top}$  and  $f, g \in \text{Hom}_{\text{Top}}(X, Y)$ . A homotopy from  $f$  to  $g$  is a continuous map

$$h : [0, 1] \times X \rightarrow Y$$

such that for every  $x \in X$ ,  $h(0, x) = f(x)$  and  $h(1, x) = g(x)$ . Two maps are homotopic if there is a homotopy between them. Although the homotopy seems intuitively like a map between maps, like the natural transformation is, this seems still very far from a natural transformation. However, there is an equivalent formulation of natural transformation, given below, which shows that homotopies and natural transformations are related. We will later show a way to make this comparison more rigorous, see 4.6.26.

**Definition 4.2.3.** ✈ (Homotopy Analogue of Natural Transformation). Let  $\Delta^1$  be the category with two objects  $0, 1$  and one nonidentity morphism  $u : 0 \rightarrow 1$ . Given two functors  $F, G : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  we can see a natural transformation  $\tau : F \Rightarrow G$  as a functor  $N : \mathcal{C} \times \Delta^1 \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  where  $N|_{\mathcal{C} \times \{0\}} = F$  and  $N|_{\mathcal{C} \times \{1\}} = G$  and thus for every  $X \in \mathcal{C}$ ,  $N(X, 0) = F(X)$  and  $N(X, 1) = G(X)$ .

This is equivalent to the previous definition for the following reason: let  $X \xrightarrow{f} Y$  be an arbitrary arrow in  $\mathcal{C}$  and consider this commutative<sup>12</sup> diagram in  $\mathcal{C} \times \Delta^1$

$$\begin{array}{ccc} (X, 0) & \xrightarrow{(id_X, u)} & (X, 1) \\ (f, id_0) \downarrow & & \downarrow (f, id_1) \\ (Y, 0) & \xrightarrow{(id_Y, u)} & (Y, 1) \end{array}$$

The image of the latter diagram under  $N$  is the following commutative diagram in  $\mathcal{D}$

$$\begin{array}{ccc} F(X) & \xrightarrow{N(id_X, u)} & G(X) \\ F(f) \downarrow & & \downarrow G(f) \\ F(Y) & \xrightarrow{N(id_Y, u)} & G(Y) \end{array}$$

Hence the components of  $\tau$  are just the image under  $N$  of the pairs of maps  $(id, u)$ , i.e.  $\forall X \in \mathcal{C}, \tau_X = N(id_X, u)$

<sup>12</sup>It commutes because of unitality in both categories:  $f \circ id_X = id_Y \circ f$  and  $u \circ id_0 = id_1 \circ u$ .

### 4.3 Equivalence of categories ✈

We did not cover this topic in the lecture, but the concept of equivalence of categories is important for results such as 6.1.2.

**Definition 4.3.1.** Let  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  be a functor.  $F$  is named

1. faithful if  $\forall X, Y \in \mathcal{C}$  the map  $\text{Hom}_{\mathcal{C}}(X, Y) \rightarrow \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}}(F(X), F(Y))$  is injective,
2. full if  $\forall X, Y \in \mathcal{C}$  the map  $\text{Hom}_{\mathcal{C}}(X, Y) \rightarrow \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}}(F(X), F(Y))$  is surjective,
3. fully faithful, if  $F$  is full and faithful,
4. conservative, if for  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  in  $\mathcal{C}$  such that if  $F(f)$  is an isomorphism, then  $f$  is an isomorphism,
5. an isomorphism if  $\exists G : \mathcal{D} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  such that  $G \circ F = id_{\mathcal{C}}$  and  $F \circ G = id_{\mathcal{D}}$ ,
6. an equivalence if  $\exists G : \mathcal{D} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  and natural isomorphisms  $G \circ F \xrightarrow{\epsilon} id_{\mathcal{C}}$  and  $F \circ G \xrightarrow{\eta} id_{\mathcal{D}}$ ,
7. essentially surjective if  $\forall Z \in \mathcal{D}, \exists X \in \mathcal{C}$  and an isomorphism  $F(X) \cong Z'$  (isomorphism in  $\mathcal{D}$ ).

**Definition 4.3.2** (Equivalence and isomorphism of Categories). Two categories  $\mathcal{C}$  and  $\mathcal{D}$  are equivalent (isomorphic) if and only if there is an equivalence (isomorphism) between them.

From the definition above we can see that equivalence of categories is a *weaker* notion than that of being isomorphic. However finding naturally isomorphic categories is very rare, so the notion of equivalence is often more useful. Here we also use the term *weak* which in category theory often refers to the substitution of an equality by an appropriate natural isomorphism.

**Notation.** We denote that two categories  $\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{D}$  are equivalent by  $\mathcal{C} \simeq \mathcal{D}$ . Whereas, we write down  $\mathcal{C} \cong \mathcal{D}$  if they are naturally isomorphic, i.e. there is a natural isomorphism between them.

**Theorem 4.3.3** (Fundamental Theorem of Category Theory<sup>13</sup>). *Two categories  $\mathcal{C}$  and  $\mathcal{D}$  are equivalent if and only if there is a fully faithful and essentially surjective functor  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$ .*

*Proof.*  $\implies$  Suppose that there is an equivalence between  $\mathcal{C} \xrightarrow{F} \mathcal{D}$ . Since it is an equivalence, there must be a functor  $\mathcal{D} \xrightarrow{G} \mathcal{C}$  such that their compositions are naturally isomorphic to the identities on  $\mathcal{C}$  and  $\mathcal{D}$  thanks respectively to natural isomorphisms  $\epsilon$  and  $\eta$ . Thus, for any  $Y \in \mathcal{D}$  there is an object  $G(Y) \in \mathcal{C}$  and an isomorphism  $\epsilon_Y : (F \circ G)(Y) \rightarrow Y$  making  $F$  essentially surjective. To prove the faithfulness of  $F$  suppose that there is a pair of parallel

<sup>13</sup>We call it fundamental theorem of category theory following [Rez21] to emphasize how important it is. It is central to category theory because it is often very interesting to prove that two categories are equivalent and virtually always one uses the "fully faithful and essentially surjective criterion". This is however an unorthodox denomination because usually such theorem just lacks a name.

arrows  $f, g : X \rightarrow X'$  in  $\mathcal{C}$  that are mapped by  $F$  to the same arrow in  $\mathcal{D}$ , i.e.  $F(f) = F(g)$ , and hence having the following commuting diagram in  $\mathcal{C}$  because of the naturality of  $\epsilon$

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} X & \xrightarrow{\epsilon_X} & G(F(X)) & \xleftarrow{\epsilon_X} & X \\ f \downarrow & & \downarrow G(F(f)) = G(F(g)) & & \downarrow g \\ X' & \xrightarrow{\epsilon_{X'}} & G(F(X')) & \xleftarrow{\epsilon_{X'}} & X' \end{array}$$

Note that  $G \circ F \stackrel{\epsilon}{\cong} id_{\mathcal{D}}$ , and so  $\epsilon_X = id_X$ ,  $\epsilon_{X'} \cong id_{X'}$ . We can conclude that  $f = g : id_{X'} \circ f = G(F(g)) \circ id_X$  and  $id_{X'} \circ g = G(F(g)) \circ id_X$  because of the commutativity of the latter diagram, thanks to unitality  $f = G(F(g)) = g$ . To prove that  $F$  is full take an arbitrary  $g : F(X) \rightarrow F(X')$  in  $\mathcal{D}$  and consider the following diagram:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} X & \xrightarrow{\epsilon_X} & G(F(X)) \\ g^* \downarrow & \downarrow G(F(g^*)) & \downarrow G(g) \\ X' & \xrightarrow{\epsilon_{X'}} & G(F(X')) \end{array}$$

Since we can compose  $\epsilon_{X'}^{-1} \circ G(g) \circ \epsilon_X$  there is an arrow  $X \rightarrow X'$  and it is unique since the diagram commutes by naturality of  $\epsilon$ , we denote it by  $g^*$ . Also because of the commutativity of the latter diagram it must be the case that  $G(F(g^*)) = G(g)$  since  $G(F(g^*)) = \epsilon_{X'}^{-1} \circ G(g) \circ \epsilon_X = G(g)$ . In the first part of the proof we proved the faithfulness of  $F$  but by a specular argument, we could have proven the faithfulness of  $G$ . So,  $g = F(g^*)$  and thus  $F$  is full.

$\Leftarrow$  For every  $Y \in \mathcal{D}$  there is an isomorphic  $F(X)$  because  $F$  is essentially surjective and for every  $X \in \mathcal{C}$  there is an isomorphic  $G(Y)$  because  $G$  is essentially surjective, thus for every  $Y \in \mathcal{D}$  we can *choose* an object  $G(Y) \in \mathcal{C}$  and an isomorphism between them. We denote the isomorphism by  $\epsilon_Y : Y \cong F(G(Y))$ . In order for  $\epsilon_Y$  to be a natural transformation there must be a unique arrow such that for any  $f : Y \rightarrow Y'$  in  $\mathcal{D}$  the following diagram commutes

$$\begin{array}{ccc} F(G(Y)) & \xrightarrow{F(G(f))} & F(G(Y')) \\ \eta_Y \downarrow & & \downarrow \eta_{Y'} \\ Y & \xrightarrow{f} & Y' \end{array}$$

Then, we get an arrow  $\eta_{Y'}^{-1} \circ f \circ \eta_Y : F(G(Y)) \rightarrow F(G(Y'))$  making the the diagram commute, such an arrow exists because  $F$  is full and is unique because  $F$  is faithful. We denote it with  $F(G(f))$ . Now we prove that  $G$  is actually a functor. Both  $F(G(id_Y))$  and  $F(id_{G(Y)})$  make the following diagram commute

$$\begin{array}{ccc} F(G(Y)) & \xrightarrow{F(id_{G(Y)})} & F(G(Y)) \\ \eta_Y \downarrow & \downarrow F(G(id_Y)) & \downarrow \eta_Y \\ Y & \xrightarrow{id_Y} & Y \end{array}$$

Since the diagram commutes  $F(G(id_Y)) = \eta_Y^{-1} \circ id_Y \circ \eta_Y = F(id_{G(Y)})$ . Moreover, given

$f : Y \rightarrow Y'$  and  $f' : Y' \rightarrow Y''$  consider the following commutative diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} F(G(Y)) & \xrightarrow{F(G(f' \circ f))} & F(G(Y'')) \\ \eta_Y \downarrow & \searrow^{F(G(f') \circ G(f))} & \downarrow \eta_{Y''} \\ Y & \xrightarrow{f' \circ f} & Y'' \end{array}$$

By essentially the same argument we just provided for the functoriality of  $F$  on the identities we get  $F(G(f') \circ G(f)) = \eta_{Y''}^{-1} \circ (f' \circ f) \circ \eta_Y = F(G(f' \circ f))$ .

Now we just need to prove that there is a natural isomorphism  $\epsilon : id_{\mathcal{C}} \cong G \circ F$ . Since  $F$  is full and faithful we can find the components of  $\epsilon$  by looking at their image under  $F$ . We denote  $\eta_F^{-1}(X)$  by  $F(\epsilon_X)$  and take into consideration a morphism  $f : X \rightarrow X'$  from  $\mathcal{C}$  and the following commuting outer rectangle

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} F(X) & \xrightarrow{F(\epsilon_X)} & F(G(F(X))) & \xrightarrow[\cong]{\eta_{F(X)}} & F(X) \\ F(f) \downarrow & & \downarrow F(G(F(f))) & & \downarrow F(f) \\ F(X') & \xrightarrow{F(\epsilon_{X'})} & F(G(F(X'))) & \xrightarrow[\cong]{\eta_{F(X')}} & F(X') \end{array}$$

The right hand square commutes because of the naturality of  $\eta$ . Since the right hand square commutes  $F(G(F(f))) = \eta_{F(X')}^{-1} \circ F(f) \circ \eta_{F(X)}$ . Since the outer square commutes  $F(\epsilon_{X'}) \circ F(f) = \eta_{F(X')}^{-1} \circ F(f) \circ \eta_{F(X)} \circ F(\epsilon_X)$ . Thus, the left hand square commutes because  $F(\epsilon_{X'}) \circ F(f) = F(G(F(f))) \circ F(\epsilon_X)$  and thereby  $\epsilon$  is natural because  $\epsilon_{X'} \circ f = G(F(f)) \circ \epsilon_X$  thanks to the faithfulness of  $F$ .  $\square$

## 4.4 Adjunction

**Definition 4.4.1** (Adjunction). Let  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  and  $G : \mathcal{D} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  be functors. We say that  $F$  and  $G$  form an adjunction if there are natural transformations

$$\eta : id_{\mathcal{C}} \Rightarrow G \circ F$$

$$\epsilon : G \circ F \Rightarrow id_{\mathcal{D}}$$

that make the following two diagrams commute,  $\forall X \in \mathcal{C}$  for the first one and  $\forall Y \in \mathcal{D}$  for the second one

$$\begin{array}{ccc} F(X) = F(id_{\mathcal{C}}(X)) & \xrightarrow{id_{F(X)}} & id_{\mathcal{D}}(F(X)) = F(X) \\ & \searrow^{F(\eta_X)} & \nearrow^{\epsilon_{F(X)}} \\ & F(G(F(X))) & \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{ccc} G(Y) = id_{\mathcal{C}}(G(Y)) & \xrightarrow{id_{G(Y)}} & G(id_{\mathcal{D}}(Y)) = G(Y) \\ & \searrow^{\eta_{G(Y)}} & \nearrow^{G(\epsilon_Y)} \\ & G(F(G(Y))) & \end{array}$$

Equivalently, we could have asked that the following two diagrams commute, the first in  $\text{Fun}(\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{D})$  and the second in  $\text{Fun}(\mathcal{D}, \mathcal{C})$ .

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 F = F \circ id_{\mathcal{C}} & \xrightarrow{id_F} & id_{\mathcal{D}} \circ F = F \\
 \searrow F(\eta) & & \nearrow \epsilon_F \\
 & F \circ G \circ F &
 \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 G = id_{\mathcal{C}} \circ G & \xrightarrow{id_G} & G \circ id_{\mathcal{D}} = G \\
 \searrow \eta_G & & \nearrow G(\epsilon) \\
 & G \circ F \circ G &
 \end{array}$$

We say that  $F$  is left adjoint to  $G$  denoted by  $F \dashv G$ , and reciprocally  $G$  is right adjoint to  $F$  denoted by  $G \vdash F$ .

See B.0.5 for an equivalent formulation<sup>14</sup>

**Example 4.4.2.** A trivial example is given by any functor that is an isomorphism. In that case the natural transformations are actually identities.

An equivalence of categories can always be promoted to an adjunction where the unit and the counit are natural isomorphisms. Such an adjunction is called adjoint equivalence. See for a proof [Rie17, 4.4.5].

The more typical examples are instead related to forgetful functors.

## 4.5 Higher categories

*Remark.* We previously remarked that there is a category of all categories with functors as morphisms (4.1). That was however not the end of the story since we also defined a morphism between functors, the natural transformation.  $\text{Cat}$  is in fact not just a "normal" category, also called a 1-category, but a strict 2-category, a category that also has morphisms between morphisms between objects and morphisms between objects compose up to strict equality<sup>15</sup>. Morphisms between objects are called 1-morphisms and are functors in the case of  $\text{Cat}$ . Morphisms between morphisms between objects are called 2-morphisms and are natural transformations in the case of  $\text{Cat}$ .

**Notation.** An  $(n, k)$ -category is a category in which all  $m$ -morphisms with  $n \geq m > k$  are invertible and all  $j$ -morphisms with  $j \leq k$  are not necessarily invertible.

Following this convention an ordinary category is a strict  $(1, 1)$ -category, a strict 2-category is a strict  $(2, 2)$ -category, a groupoid is a strict  $(1, 0)$  groupoid, and more generally an  $n$ -groupoid is an  $(n, 0)$ -category. In order to make this more rigorous we need to loosely characterize enriched categories.

<sup>14</sup>Although in the  $\infty$ -categorical context, it is easily translatable by forgetting about the  $\infty$ s and substituting 'set' for ' $\infty$ -groupoid'.

<sup>15</sup>We remark soon after (see 4.5) in which sense  $\text{Cat}$  is a *strict* 2-category. See also for comparison the definition of Bicategory, a weak 2-category, 4.8.32.

**Definition 4.5.1** (Loose definition of enriched category). Given a category  $\mathcal{D}$  a category  $\mathcal{C}$  enriched over  $\mathcal{D}$  is a category such that for every  $X, Y \in \mathcal{C}$

$$\text{Hom}_{\mathcal{C}}(X, Y) \in \mathcal{D}$$

*Remark.* Note that this is just a loose characterization of what an enriched category is! For instance, one might wonder, how could we define the composition map, since for ordinary categories we defined it as a map of sets out of apt *products* of Hom-sets. There is a way to sensibly talk about products of objects in many several other categories. We spell out the rigorous definition later on, see 4.6.18. We gave this loose characterization just to be able to characterize higher strict categories.

**Example 4.5.2.**

- A locally small category is a category enriched over Set
- Cat is enriched over Cat, since instead of Hom-sets one has functor categories, which are themselves categories and hence in Cat. More generally categories with Hom-categories/functor categories instead of Hom-sets are called strict 2-categories, or (2,2)-categories following the convention we just stated.
- Grpd is enriched over groupoid, since (as we previously remarked, see 4.2) all natural transformations between functors with a groupoid in the codomain are natural isomorphisms and therefore all functor categories (i.e. the Hom-objects of Grpd) are groupoids and hence in Grpd. One calls categories enriched over Grpd strict (2,1)-categories by the notational convention we just spelled out.

Having loosely characterized enriched categories we can provide a definition of strict  $n$ -categories. Following the notational convention we previously spelled out in a previous example, they amount to  $(n, n)$ -categories.

**Definition 4.5.3.** We define strict  $n$ -categories inductively. A 0-category is a set. A strict  $n$ -category is a category  $\mathcal{C}$  enriched in a (small<sup>16</sup>) strict  $(n - 1)$ -category. This means that for any two  $X, Y \in \mathcal{C}$ ,  $\text{Hom}_{\mathcal{C}}(X, Y)$  is not a set as usual, but a small strict  $(n - 1)$ -category.

**Example 4.5.4.**

- In the case that  $n = 1$  we end up with our usual definition of a (locally small) category (see 4.1.1).
- Cat is a 2-category, in fact for any two  $\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{D} \in \text{Cat}$ ,  $\text{Hom}_{\text{Cat}}(\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{D})$  is a 1-category, more specifically a functor category, i.e. a category where objects are functors and morphisms are natural transformations. Specifically:

$$\text{Hom}_{\text{Cat}}(\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{D}) = \text{Fun}(\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{D})$$

*Remark.* We call such categories, *strict*  $n$ -categories because  $(n - 1)$ -morphisms are strictly associative and unital, associativity and unitality hold with strict identities, on the nose. For example in Cat it holds that  $\forall F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}, id_{\mathcal{D}} \circ F = F = F \circ id_{\mathcal{C}}$  and  $\forall F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}, G : \mathcal{D} \rightarrow \mathcal{E}, H : \mathcal{E} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}$

$$H \circ (G \circ F) = (H \circ G) \circ F.$$

We will later encounter a notion of weak 2-category (see 4.8.32).

<sup>16</sup>Because of size issues, as we remarked before, we work with locally small categories and the size of the Hom of any two objects cannot be greater than a set.

## 4.6 Monoidal categories

Recall that a monoid is a group where elements are not required to be invertible: a set  $M$  with a distinguished object  $e \in M$  called unit, also known as neutral element, and a map of sets  $m : M \times M \rightarrow M$  such that  $m$  is:

- associative

$$\forall a, b, c \in M, \quad m(m(a, b), c) = m(a, m(b, c))$$

usually written

$$\forall a, b, c \in M, \quad (a \cdot b) \cdot c = a \cdot (b \cdot c)$$

- and unital with respect to  $e$ :

$$m(e, -) = \text{id}(-), \quad m(-, e) = \text{id}(-)$$

where  $\forall x \in M, \text{id}(x) = x$ . The latter equation is usually written

$$\forall x \in M, \quad e \cdot x = x = x \cdot e$$

A monoidal category generalizes this structure with respect to objects *and* morphisms of a category.

**Definition 4.6.1.** Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a category. A monoidal structure on  $\mathcal{C}$  is

- (O) an object  $\mathbb{1}_{\mathcal{C}} \in \mathcal{C}$ , the *unit*
- (M) bifunctor  $\otimes : \mathcal{C} \times \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$ , the *tensor product*
- (A) a natural isomorphism  $\alpha : - \otimes (- \otimes -) \Rightarrow (- \otimes -) \otimes -$  that witnesses associativity:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & & - \otimes (- \otimes -) \\ & \searrow & \downarrow \alpha \\ \mathcal{C} \times \mathcal{C} \times \mathcal{C} & & \mathcal{C} \\ & \nearrow & (- \otimes -) \otimes - \end{array}$$

the *associator*

- (U) natural isomorphisms  $\lambda : \mathbb{1}_{\mathcal{C}} \otimes (-) \Rightarrow \text{id}_{\mathcal{C}} = (-)$  and  $\rho : - \otimes \mathbb{1}_{\mathcal{C}} \Rightarrow \text{id}_{\mathcal{C}} = (-)$  witnessing unitality:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathcal{C} & \xrightarrow{\mathbb{1} \otimes -} & \mathcal{C} \\ \lambda \downarrow & \searrow & \downarrow \text{id}_{\mathcal{C}} \\ \mathcal{C} & \xrightarrow{\text{id}_{\mathcal{C}} = (-)} & \mathcal{C} \end{array} \quad \begin{array}{ccc} \mathcal{C} & \xrightarrow{- \otimes \mathbb{1}} & \mathcal{C} \\ \rho \downarrow & \searrow & \downarrow \text{id}_{\mathcal{C}} \\ \mathcal{C} & \xrightarrow{\text{id}_{\mathcal{C}} = (-)} & \mathcal{C} \end{array}$$

respectively the *left and right unitors*

such that

- $\forall X, Y$  the following diagram commutes

$$\begin{array}{ccc} (X \otimes \mathbb{1}) \otimes Y & \xrightarrow{\alpha_{X, \mathbb{1} \otimes Y}} & X \otimes (\mathbb{1} \otimes Y) \\ \rho_X \otimes \text{id}_Y \searrow & & \swarrow \text{id}_X \otimes \lambda_Y \\ & X \otimes Y & \end{array}$$

This diagram is called the triangle identity. It explains how the associator and the two unitors interact.

- $\forall W, X, Y, Z$  the following diagram commutes

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 & ((W \otimes X) \otimes Y) \otimes Z & \\
 \alpha_{W, X, Y} \otimes id_Z \swarrow & & \searrow \alpha_{W \otimes X, Y, Z} \\
 (W \otimes (X \otimes Y)) \otimes Z & & (W \otimes X) \otimes (Y \otimes Z) \\
 \alpha_{W, X \otimes Y, Z} \downarrow & & \downarrow \alpha_{W, X, Y \otimes Z} \\
 W \otimes ((X \otimes Y) \otimes Z) & \xrightarrow{id_W \otimes \alpha_{X, Y, Z}} & W \otimes (X \otimes (Y \otimes Z))
 \end{array}$$

The latter diagram is called Mac Lane’s pentagon. Thanks to 4.8.4 it pins down the associativity of more than 3 objects.

**Notation.** As we usually abuse notation and denote monoids  $(M, \cdot)$  just with  $M$ , although a monoid is a set *equipped with* a binary operation; we will denote monoidal categories  $(\mathcal{C}, \otimes, \mathbb{1}_{\mathcal{C}})$  just with  $\mathcal{C}$ , although a monoidal category is a category *equipped with* a monoidal structure.

**Definition 4.6.2** (Strict Monoidal Category). A strict monoidal category is a monoidal category where objects and morphisms are associative and unital strictly, not up to specific natural isomorphisms, i.e. the associator and the left/right unitors are the identity. This means that for every  $f : A, B, C \in \mathcal{C}$  and every  $f : A \rightarrow B, g : B \rightarrow C, h : C \rightarrow D \in \mathcal{C}$  where  $\mathcal{C}$  is a strict monoidal category:

- $A \otimes (B \otimes C) = (A \otimes B) \otimes C$
- $A \otimes \mathbb{1}_{\mathcal{C}} = A = \mathbb{1}_{\mathcal{C}} \otimes A$
- $f \otimes (g \otimes h) = (f \otimes g) \otimes h$
- $f \otimes id_{\mathbb{1}} = f = id_{\mathbb{1}} \otimes f$

**Example 4.6.3** (Examples of *strict* monoidal categories).

- Given an arbitrary category  $\mathcal{C}$ , the set<sup>17</sup> of its endofunctors  $\text{End}(\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{C}) = \text{Hom}_{\text{Cat}}(\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{C})$  are the objects of a monoidal category with morphisms given by natural transformations between them. The tensor product is given by composition and it is associative since composition of functors is associative. The monoidal unit is  $id_{\mathcal{C}}$  and is indeed left and right unital. Note however that this is an example of *strict* monoidal category since functors compose strictly and not up to some associator and unitors.
- A monoid  $(M, \cdot, e)$ , seen as a category with objects  $m \in M$  and only the identity morphisms, is a discrete strict monoidal category. The monoidal structure is simply given by multiplication of the elements of the monoid, which is clearly (strictly) associative and unital. A discrete category is a category where there are only identity morphisms.

**Example 4.6.4** (Examples of monoidal categories). Examples of monoidal categories are

- $(\text{AbGrp}, \otimes)$
- $(\text{AbGrp}, \oplus)$

<sup>17</sup>A set and not a larger collection since we defined categories to be locally small.

- $(\text{Vect}_k, \otimes)$
- $(\text{Vect}_k, \oplus)$
- $(\text{Set}, \coprod)$
- $(\text{Set}, \times)$
- $(\text{Top}, \times)$
- $(\text{Cat}, \times)$

### 4.6.1 Cartesian monoidal categories

In particular,  $(\text{AbGrp}, \oplus)$ ,  $(\text{Vect}_k, \oplus)$ ,  $(\text{Set}, \times)$ ,  $(\text{Top}, \times)$ ,  $(\text{Cat}, \times)$  are all examples of special monoidal categories: cartesian monoidal categories. A cartesian monoidal category is a monoidal category where the monoidal structure is given by a suitable notion of cartesian product in such category. We give a definition via a *universal property* which is therefore valid for every category (although *existence* must then be checked in the categories of interest).

**Definition 4.6.5** (Cartesian product). Given  $A, B \in \mathcal{C}$ , their cartesian product, if it exists, is the tuple  $(A \times B, pr_1, pr_2)$ , where  $A \times B \in \text{ob}(\mathcal{C})$  and  $pr_1 : A \times B \rightarrow A$   $pr_2 : A \times B \rightarrow B$  such that for every other object  $Y$  with morphisms  $f : Y \rightarrow A$  and  $g : Y \rightarrow B$  there is a unique morphism  $u : Y \rightarrow A \times B$ . This definition is summarised by the fact that the following commuting diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 & & Y & & \\
 & f \swarrow & \downarrow \exists! u & \searrow g & \\
 A & \xleftarrow{pr_1} & A \times B & \xrightarrow{pr_2} & B
 \end{array}$$

If we regard  $\mathcal{C}$  as a specific category such construction gives indeed rise to the expected notion of product in such a category: the cartesian product in  $\text{AbGrp}$  and  $\text{Vect}_k$  is indeed the direct sum, the cartesian product of sets with its projections in  $\text{Set}$ , the product category in  $\text{Cat}$  and the product of spaces with the product topology in  $\text{Top}$ .

The following uniqueness property is typical of objects defined via a universal property:

**Lemma 4.6.6.** *Every product is unique up to isomorphism.*

*Proof.* Suppose  $(A \times B, pr_1, pr_2)$  and  $(Y, f, g)$  are both products of  $A, B \in \mathcal{C}$ . Then there are unique morphisms  $u : A \times B \rightarrow Y$  and  $u' : Y \rightarrow A \times B$  such that the following diagram commutes

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 & & Y & & \\
 & f \swarrow & \downarrow \exists! u & \searrow g & \\
 A & \xleftarrow{pr_1} & A \times B & \xrightarrow{pr_2} & B \\
 & & \downarrow \exists! u' & & \\
 & & Y & & \\
 & \swarrow f & & \nwarrow g & \\
 & & A \times B & & 
 \end{array}$$

Since everything commutes  $f = f \circ u' \circ u$  and  $g = g \circ u' \circ u$ . Therefore,  $u' \circ u = id_Y$  because  $f = f \circ id_Y$  and  $g = g \circ id_Y$  and  $id_Y$  is the unique morphism such that the latter two equations hold. □

**Lemma 4.6.7.** *The cartesian product is commutative up to isomorphism.*

*Proof.* If  $(A \times B, pr_1, pr_2)$  and  $(B \times A, pr_1, pr_2)$  are both products of  $A, B \in \mathcal{C}$  then, they are isomorphic because of 4.6.6. □

**Lemma 4.6.8.** *The cartesian product is associative up to isomorphism.*

*Proof.* Same reasoning as in the proof of the commutativity of the cartesian product. □

In a cartesian monoidal category  $\mathcal{C}$  the unit is a terminal object, i.e. an object  $*$   $\in \mathcal{C}$  such that every object  $X \in \mathcal{C}$  has a unique morphism to it:  $\exists! \phi_X : X \rightarrow *$ .

Now, suppose such element exists, consider an arbitrary object  $A \in \mathcal{C}$  and a product with the terminal object  $(A \times *, pr_1, pr_2)$ . Define the units  $\rho_A : A \times * \rightarrow A$  and  $\lambda_A : * \times A \rightarrow A$  as the projection  $pr_1 : A \times * \rightarrow A$  (this can be done because the cartesian product is commutative: clearly  $\rho_A = pr_1$ , while  $\lambda_A$  is the same as  $pr_1$  up to an isomorphism from  $* \times A$  to  $A \times *$ ).

Such projection is indeed an isomorphism because  $(A, id_A, \phi_A)$  is also a product of  $*$ ,  $A \in \mathcal{C}$ : any object  $Y \in \mathcal{C}$  with morphisms  $f : Y \rightarrow A$  and  $\phi_Y \rightarrow *$  has indeed a unique morphism into  $A$  such that the diagram of the product commutes, namely  $f$  itself. Thus, since both  $(A \times *, pr_1, pr_2)$  and  $(A, id_A, \phi_A)$  are products of the same two elements, they must be isomorphic because of 4.6.6.

Hence, we see how any category with finite cartesian products is a monoidal category. Cartesian monoidal categories are in a sense special because they have some maps which are not possessed by every monoidal category, notably the diagonal map  $\Delta_X : X \rightarrow X \times X$  and  $\phi_X : X \rightarrow \mathbb{1}_{\mathcal{C}}$  giving every object a comonoid structure. Moreover, they are all symmetric (defined later, 4.8.2) because the cartesian product is symmetric.

## 4.6.2 Noncartesian monoidal categories

**Notation.** We denote the category of abelian groups  $\text{AbGrp}$  also with  $\text{Ab}$ .

In the previous paragraph, we have talked about cartesian monoidal categories and left out some examples of *noncartesian* monoidal categories like  $(\text{AbGrp}, \otimes)$  and  $(\text{Vect}_k, \otimes)$ . We now encounter some examples of noncartesian monoidal categories, which will be central in this class. They will be all similar to  $(\text{AbGrp}, \otimes)$ , so we will first explain this category and then draw parallels with the others. To introduce the tensor product between abelian groups we first have to define what is a bilinear map:

**Definition 4.6.9** (Bilinear Map). For  $A, B, C \in \text{Ab}$ , a bilinear map, that is a group bihomomorphism, is a function

$$f : A \times B \rightarrow C$$

which is a group homomorphism, aka linear map, in both arguments.

An explanation of what happens to the elements of  $A, B$  might be clearer. Note that a cartesian product  $A \times B$  in  $\text{Ab}$  is an abelian group where the operation is

$$(a_1, b_1) + (a_2, b_2) = (a_1 + a_2, b_1 + b_2).$$

So, we can spell out what it means to be a group bihomomorphism in the following way

**Definition 4.6.10** (Bilinear Map via Elements). A bilinear map is a function  $f : A \times B \rightarrow C$  such that for all  $a_1, a_2 \in A$  and  $b_1, b_2 \in B$  it holds that

$$f(a_1 + a_2, b_1) = f(a_1, b_1) + f(a_2, b_1)$$

and

$$f(a_1, b_1 + b_2) = f(a_1, b_1) + f(a_1, b_2)$$

Having defined what a bilinear map is, we can arrive at the definition of tensor product in  $\text{Ab}$

**Definition 4.6.11** (Tensor Product of Abelian Groups). The tensor product of two abelian groups  $A$  and  $B$  is given by  $(A \otimes B, \phi)$  where  $A \otimes B$  is an abelian group and  $\phi : A \times B \rightarrow A \otimes B$  is a bilinear map.  $(A \otimes B, \phi)$  has the universal property that any bilinear map out of  $A \times B$  factors uniquely through  $A \otimes B$ , i.e.  $\forall C, h : A \times B \rightarrow C$  there is a unique linear map  $\bar{h} : A \otimes B \rightarrow C$  such that the following diagram commutes

$$\begin{array}{ccc} A \times B & \xrightarrow{h} & C \\ \phi \downarrow & \searrow \bar{h} & \uparrow \\ A \otimes B & & \end{array}$$

It can be equivalently defined via elements.

**Definition 4.6.12** (Tensor Product of Abelian Groups via Elements). For  $A, B \in \text{Ab}$  let  $a, a' \in A$  and  $b, b' \in B$  and consider the free abelian group on  $A \times B$ . Then, consider the free abelian group generated by elements of the form:

$$(a + a', b) - (a, b) - (a', b)$$

$$(a, b + b') - (a, b) - (a, b').$$

We denote such group by  $R$ .  $A \otimes B$  is then the following quotient:  $A \otimes B = \frac{A \times B}{R}$ .

Another very important example for us of noncartesian<sup>18</sup> monoidal category is  $(\text{Vect}_k, \otimes)$ .

**Definition 4.6.13** (Tensor Product between Vector Spaces). The tensor product is usually defined from bases (see wikipedia entry on tensor product) or via quotient spaces<sup>19</sup> along these lines: let  $V, W \in \text{Vect}_K$ . Consider  $L$ , a vector space that has  $V \times W$  as basis. Let  $R$  be the subspace whose elements are linear combinations of one of the following forms

$$(v + v', w) - (v, w) - (v', w)$$

$$(v, w + w') - (v, w) - (v, w')$$

$$(kv, w) - k(v, w)$$

$$(v, kw) - k(v, w)$$

where  $v, v' \in V$ ,  $w, w' \in W$  and  $k \in K$ . The tensor product is then the quotient space  $L/R = V \otimes W$ , where the image  $(v, w)$  in this quotient is denoted by  $v \otimes w$ .

The cartesian product construction helps us find an equivalent definition of the tensor product: it is an endofunctor  $\otimes : \text{Vect}_K \times \text{Vect}_K \rightarrow \text{Vect}_K$  where  $V \otimes W$  has the following universal property:

1. there is a unique bilinear map out of the cartesian product of the underlying sets  $\phi : V \times W \rightarrow V \otimes W$

<sup>18</sup>Interestingly, the fact that  $\text{Vect}_k$  is not cartesian and in particular  $\text{Hilb}_{\mathbb{C}}$  (the category of complex Hilbert spaces) is the main reason behind the no-cloning theorem from quantum information theory, more on this in [Bae04]. This characterizing non-cartesian aspect is nicely summarized by Freed in [Fre12], "We will see that a characteristic property of quantum systems is that disjoint unions map to tensor products. The passage from classical to quantum is (poetically) a passage from addition to multiplication, a kind of exponentiation."

<sup>19</sup>We use the definition via quotient spaces because it is easier to see that it fulfills the equivalent one via universal properties and the cartesian product.

2. any other bilinear map out of the cartesian product of the underlying sets  $h : V \times W \rightarrow X$  factors through  $\phi$ :

$$\begin{array}{ccc} V \times W & \xrightarrow{h} & X \\ \phi \downarrow & \nearrow \bar{h} & \\ V \otimes W & & \end{array}$$

More generally the category of modules is also a very important example of noncartesian monoidal category.

**Definition 4.6.14** (Module).

**Example 4.6.15.** The category of bimodules is an example of symmetric monoidal category

**Definition 4.6.16** (Bimodule).

Another example of non-cartesian monoidal category is the category of disks. Interestingly, it is not of algebraic nature as the examples we gave before.

**Example 4.6.17.** The category of oriented 1-dimensional open disks  $\text{Disk}_1^{\text{fr}}$  is also an important example of symmetric monoidal category for us in the context of TFTs. Recall that  $D^1 \cong (0, 1) \cong \mathbb{R}$ .

- Its objects are finite disjoint unions of 1-dimensional open disks

$$\emptyset, \quad \mathbb{R}, \quad \mathbb{R} \amalg \mathbb{R}, \quad \dots, \quad \mathbb{R}^{\amalg k}$$

with  $k \in \mathbb{N}$  arbitrary.

- $\text{Hom}_{\text{Disk}_{1,0}^{\text{fr}}}(X, Y)$  consists of all smooth embeddings  $j : X \hookrightarrow Y$  respecting orientations, i.e. there is an orientation preserving diffeomorphism from  $X$  onto its image, .
- The tensor product is given by the disjoint union: given  $X$  a disjoint union of  $n$  oriented 1-disks and  $Y$  a disjoint union of  $m$  oriented 1-disks,  $X \amalg Y$  is a disjoint union of  $n + m$  oriented disks.
- The unit is the empty set since given an arbitrary disjoint union of disks  $X$ ,  $\emptyset \amalg X \cong X \cong X \amalg \emptyset$ .
- There is a diffeomorphism  $X \amalg Y \cong Y \amalg X$  making  $\text{Disk}_{1,0}^{\text{fr}}$  a *symmetric* monoidal category.

We will use it to give the **morally right** definition of monoid object (see 4.8.1), i.e. homotopy coherent.

### 4.6.3 Enriched categories

Ab is very important as an enriching category. Before, we gave a loose characterization of what an enriched category is by just stating that the Homs are objects of whatever category we are enriching over. However, we glossed over an essential requirement: the category we are enriching on must be monoidal in order to define composition. We now give a fully satisfactory definition of an enriched category:

**Definition 4.6.18** (Enriched Category). Given a *monoidal* category  $\mathcal{D}$ , a  $\mathcal{D}$ -enriched category  $\mathcal{C}$ , aka  $\mathcal{D}$ -category or category enriched over  $\mathcal{D}$ , is a category  $\mathcal{C}$  such that

1.  $\forall X, Y \in \mathcal{C}, \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{C}}(X, Y) \in \mathcal{D}$ . We call  $\text{Hom}_{\mathcal{C}}(X, Y)$  a Hom-object
2. Composition is a morphism in  $\mathcal{D}$ :

$$\circ : \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{C}}(Y, Z) \otimes \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{C}}(X, Y) \rightarrow \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{C}}(X, Z)$$

3. For any  $X \in \mathcal{C}$  there is

$$id_X : \mathbb{1}_{\mathcal{D}} \rightarrow \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{C}}(X, X)$$

4. There is a Mac-Lane pentagon for Hom-objects in order to specify how  $\circ$  is associative and two triangle diagrams in order to pin down how  $\circ$  is left and right unital with respect to composable identity morphisms. One can check the spelled out diagram at definition 1.2.34 of [Lan21]

**Example 4.6.19.** We recall some examples spelled out before and provide a new one coming from topology (the last one):

1. A locally small category is a category enriched over  $\text{Set}$ .  $\text{Set}$  is a category enriched over itself.
2. A 2-category is a category enriched over  $\text{Cat}$ .  $\text{Cat}$  is a category enriched over itself, since  $\text{Cat}$  is a 2-category because Homs are functor *categories*.
3. A strict  $n$ -category is a category enriched over a strict  $(n - 1)$ -category.
4. A strict  $(2, 1)$ -category is a category in which 2-morphisms are invertible and 1-morphisms not necessarily. It is a  $\text{Grpd}$ -enriched category. An example of  $(2, 1)$ -category is  $\text{Grpd}$  itself, since all  $\text{Hom}_{\text{Grpd}}$  are indeed groupoids (see 4.5.2 for an explanation).
5. A topologically enriched category is a category enriched over  $\text{Top}$ . The category of compactly generated Hausdorff spaces  $\text{CGHaus}$ , i.e. a category containing all  $CW$ -complexes, is a topologically enriched category, since one can take the mapping space  $\text{Map}(X, Y)$  with the compact-open topology for any  $X, Y \in \text{CGHaus}$ . Such categories can be used to model  $(\infty, 1)$ -categories see 4.6.27 for a sketch of how this might work.

There is an interesting example of strict  $(2, 1)$ -category from topology and it will let us rigorously show in which sense a homotopy is a natural transformations and why one might want to talk about  $\infty$ -categories. Take a look at the following subsection for more on this 4.6.4.

Having characterized satisfactorily enriched categories we can now define what is an Ab-enriched category.

**Definition 4.6.20** (Ab-Category). An Ab-category, aka ringoid, Ab-enriched,  $\mathcal{C}$  is a category  $\mathcal{C}$  enriched over  $\text{Ab}$ . This is equivalent to saying that

1.  $\forall X, Y \in \mathcal{C}. \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{C}}(X, Y) \in \text{Ab}$

2. Composition is a morphism in Ab:

$$+ : \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{C}}(Y, Z) \otimes_{\text{Ab}} \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{C}}(X, Y) \rightarrow \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{C}}(X, Z)$$

such that it is associative and unital with respect to composable identity morphisms; in short  $\text{Hom}_{\mathcal{C}}$ -objects of  $\mathcal{C}$  possess an abelian structure with  $+$  as a binary operation

3. The composition of the underlying Hom-sets is bilinear with respect to  $+$ , meaning that  $\circ$  of Hom-sets distributes over  $+$  of Hom-abelian groups i.e.

$$f \circ (g + h) = (f \circ g) + (f \circ h)$$

$$(f + g) \circ h = (f \circ h) + (g \circ h)$$

*Remark.* Note that in Ab-enriched categories there is an object  $0$  such that for any  $X \in \mathcal{C}$  there is a unique morphism  $0 \rightarrow X$  and a unique morphism  $X \rightarrow 0$ . This means that  $0$  is an initial and final object, such objects are usually called zero objects.

**Example 4.6.21.**

- A ring is a one object ringoid. More explicitly, a ring  $(R, \cdot, +) = (\text{Hom}_{\mathbf{BR}}(*, *), \circ, +)$
- Ab is an Ab-category.

**Definition 4.6.22** (Additive category). A category  $\mathcal{C}$  is additive if it is an Ab-enriched category such that it has finite coproducts.

Note that in an Ab-enriched category, finite coproducts coincide with finite products, any finite product is a finite coproduct and viceversa.

**Definition 4.6.23** (Abelian category). A category  $\mathcal{C}$  is abelian if it is an additive category such that

- every morphism has kernel and cokernel
- every monomorphism is a kernel and every epimorphism is a cokernel, or equivalently, the evident map  $\text{Coim}(f) \rightarrow \text{Im}(f)$  is an isomorphism

*Remark.* The category of abelian groups is very important for homological algebra, a field with important applications to many fields, e.g. algebraic geometry (in particular intersection theory) and algebraic topology. The standard reference is [Wei94], check out part I of [MG24] for a modern introduction to the subject geared towards higher categorical generalizations. Such higher categorical generalizations are of major interest to us in the context of TFTs, we will later sketch for example how they can be used to calculate topological phases of matter (5.1.1).

As with Ab,  $\text{Vect}_k$  can also be used as enriching category.

**Definition 4.6.24.** A linear category  $\mathcal{C}$ , or algebroid, is a category enriched over  $\text{Vect}_k$ .

**Example 4.6.25.**

- A  $k$ -algebra is a one object algebroid.
- $\text{Vect}_k$  is a linear category, since  $\text{Hom}_{\text{Vect}_k}(X, Y)$  is a vector space

#### 4.6.4 Grothendieck's Homotopy Hypothesis and $\infty$ -categories

**Example 4.6.26.** We previously spelled out an analogue formulation of the natural transformation (see 3). This shows that the notion of homotopy and natural transformation are related. A way to more rigorously pin down that a homotopy is some kind of natural transformation is via the the homotopy 2-category of topological spaces. Instead of taking paths up to homotopies between paths, as in the more famous  $\mathbf{hTop}$ , we take homotopies between paths up to homotopies between homotopies between paths. This results in a strict  $(2,1)$ -category  $\mathbf{h}_2\mathbf{Top}$  where objects are topological spaces, 1-morphisms are continuous maps and 2-morphisms are homotopies between continuous maps up to higher homotopies, i.e. homotopies between homotopies between continuous maps. A homotopy between a homotopy between continuous maps is defined in the following manner: given continuous functions  $f, g : X \rightarrow Y$  and homotopies between them  $k, h : X \times [0, 1] \rightarrow Y$ , a homotopy  $L$  between these two homotopies  $k$  and  $h$  is a continuous function  $L : X \times [0, 1] \times [0, 1] \rightarrow Y$  such that

- $\forall t \in [0, 1] \forall x \in X. H(0, t, x) = h(t, x)$
- $\forall t \in [0, 1] \forall x \in X. H(1, t, x) = k(t, x)$
- $\forall t' \in [0, 1] \forall x \in X. H(t', 0, x) = f(x)$
- $\forall t' \in [0, 1] \forall x \in X. H(t', 1, x) = g(x)$

If one takes topological spaces as objects, continuous maps between them as 1-morphisms, and homotopies between continuous maps *up to* homotopies between homotopies one gets the homotopy 2-category of topological spaces  $\mathbf{h}_2\mathbf{Top}$  and is an example of a strict  $(2, 1)$ -category. If one restricts themselves to spaces admitting the structure of CW-complexes, i.e. something like weakly Hausdorff compactly generated spaces, and then take the homotopy 1-types thereof, we get a subcategory of  $\mathbf{h}_2\mathbf{Top}$  called  $2-1\mathbf{Type}$ . Via the Eilenberg-MacLane space of a groupoid one can establish an equivalence of categories

$$2-1\mathbf{Type} \simeq \mathbf{Grpd}$$

This is Grothendieck's infamous homotopy hypothesis in dimension 1. It was formulated in *Pursuing Stacks* ([Gro21]) in general for  $n$ -groupoids. We now sketch how this might work in full glory, i.e. for  $\infty$ -groupoids.

**Notation.** By  $\infty$ -category we mean  $(\infty, 1)$ -category.

**Example 4.6.27.** Regarding the last example, one could ask why stop at homotopies between homotopies and not go all the way to homotopies between homotopies between homotopies, homotopies between ... for  $\infty$  many times? This is a great question and also the way to provide universal properties for homotopy co/limits (for more on this see chapters 1 and 2 of [Har19] and the start of B) and homotopy coherent diagrams more generally. In the end, one would get an  $(\infty, 1)$ -category, a category in which the only morphisms that are not necessarily (weakly<sup>20</sup>) invertible are morphisms between objects,

<sup>20</sup>To be precise, higher morphisms in such a category are weakly invertible and not strictly. Weakly invertible means that it is not the case the sense that  $f \circ g = id$ , but  $f \circ g \simeq id$ . This is not at all negative. That things are not strict but up to homotopy/equivalence is exactly what one desires in this context.

all other morphisms between morphisms are invertible; in other words, a category in which all  $n > 1$ -morphisms are invertible and 1-morphisms not necessarily.

Moreover, one gets the fundamental  $\infty$ -groupoid of a space via a similar reasoning: instead of considering paths up to homotopies between paths, one can go all the way up and consider homotopies between homotopies between... without forgetting any information. All paths and all homotopies are clearly invertible so for all  $k \in \mathbb{N}_0$  all  $k$ -morphisms are invertible and that is why it is called  *$\infty$ -groupoid*. A synonym for  $\infty$ -groupoid is  $(\infty, 0)$ -category. Note that the category of all  $\infty$ -groupoids is not an  $\infty$ -groupoids, because functors between  $\infty$ -groupoids are not necessarily invertible, parallelly to functors between 1-groupoids. The previously mentioned homotopy hypothesis states that the  $(\infty, 1)$ -category of (nice) topological spaces we just sketched is equivalent to the  $(\infty, 1)$ -category of  $\infty$ -groupoids. The intuition behinds this is that this should hold thanks to the construction of fundamental  $\infty$ -groupoids of spaces, whereas, in the other direction, from  $\infty$ -groupoids one can construct spaces via something called the geometric realization. This equivalence is the reason why in the literature the category of  $\infty$ -groupoids is sometimes called the category of Spaces. If the equivalence holds or not of course depends on how we define 'space' and  $\infty$ -groupoid, but it holds for many reasonable definitions, for instance a category of convenient topological spaces like the one of compactly generated weakly Hausdorff spaces.

Similarly to  $(2, 1)$ -categories, which are enriched over ordinary groupoids, the sketchy idea behind an  $(\infty, 1)$ -category is being enriched over  $\infty$ -groupoids.

More concretely, one way to model this kind of categories with infinitely many invertible morphisms is with topologically enriched categories (which we previously described 4.6.19), since mapping spaces are Hom-objects, 2-morphisms are paths in such mapping spaces and higher morphisms are given by the homotopies between homotopies.

A further way is via some specific simplicially enriched categories, i.e. categories enriched with the cartesian monoidal category of simplicial sets  $\mathbf{sSet}$  (sometimes denoted  $\mathbf{Set}_\Delta$ ). A synonym of simplicially enriched category is simplicial category.

**Definition 4.6.28** (The Simplex Category). We call simplex category, the category with all linearly ordered sets  $[n]$  as objects and weakly monotonic maps as morphisms. We denote such category with  $\Delta$ .

**Definition 4.6.29** (Simplicial Set). A simplicial set is a  $\mathbf{Set}$ -valued presheaf on  $\Delta$ , i.e. a functor  $X : \Delta^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$ . Simplicial sets form a functor category where morphisms are natural transformations denoted  $\mathbf{sSet}$ . It is bicomplete, see the proof in [Lan21, 1.1.24]

However, for simplicial categories, we do not want simplicial sets in general, but simplicial sets that are Kan complexes<sup>21</sup>. This is because these special simplicial sets give a geometric model of  $\infty$ -groupoids and hence by enriching a category via such simplicial sets we get the desired  $(\infty, 1)$ -category, similarly to getting  $(2, 1)$ -categories by enriching with ordinary groupoids.

Quasicategories are another construction to model  $\infty$ -categories that has been proven very useful and apt to create useful constructions, see for instance [Lur08] and [Jac17]. Quasicategories are simplicial sets similar to Kan complexes<sup>22</sup> and there is strong connection to simplicially enriched categories (see [Lan21]).

<sup>21</sup>See <https://ncatlab.org/nlab/show/Kan+complex>.

<sup>22</sup>In fact, a synonym for quasicategories is weak Kan complexes.

These three different ways to model  $\infty$ -categories are equivalent in some apt sense (see [Jac09] and [Ber06]).

*Remark.* Another important example of  $(\infty, 1)$ -category is the category of spectra, a category similar<sup>23</sup> to the category of abelian groups which we will encounter later (see B).

---

<sup>23</sup>Abelian Groups:Algebra~Spectra:Higher Algebra, for more on this check out [MG24].

## 4.7 Objects internal to a monoidal category

**Definition 4.7.1** (Monoid Object). A monoid object in a monoidal category  $\mathcal{C}$  is an object  $M \in \mathcal{C}$  equipped with two distinguished morphisms,  $\mu : M \otimes M \rightarrow M$  and  $\eta : \mathbb{1}_{\mathcal{C}} \rightarrow M$  called respectively multiplication and unit such that the following diagram commutes, so that the binary operation is associative

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} (M \otimes M) \otimes M & \xrightarrow{\alpha_{M,M,M}} & M \otimes (M \otimes M) & \xrightarrow{id_M \otimes \mu} & M \otimes M \\ \mu \otimes id_M \downarrow & & & & \downarrow \mu \\ M \otimes M & \xrightarrow{\mu} & & & M \end{array}$$

and the following also commutes, so that the binary operation is left and right unital

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} \mathbb{1}_{\mathcal{C}} \otimes M & \xrightarrow{\eta \otimes id_M} & M \otimes M & \xleftarrow{id_M \otimes \eta} & M \otimes \mathbb{1}_{\mathcal{C}} \\ & \searrow \lambda_M & \downarrow \mu & \swarrow \rho_M & \\ & & M & & \end{array}$$

Making multiplication associative and unital.

**Example 4.7.2.** A monoid object is a

- Monoid when in  $(\text{Set}, \times)$
- Algebra when in  $(\text{Vect}_k, \otimes)$
- Algebra when in  $(BMod, \otimes)$
- *Strict* monoidal category when in  $(Cat, \times)$
- Topological monoids in  $(\text{Top}, \times)$

This example clarifies the parallel between monoids, algebras and monoidal categories we made at the start of this section. However, one could be bothered by the fact that we do not actually get a general monoidal category (i.e. not necessarily strict). To do this we will briefly talk about  $\mathbb{E}_1$ -algebras in section 4.8.1.

**Definition 4.7.3** (Morphism of Monoids). Let  $M, M' \in \mathcal{C}$  be monoid objects  $(M, \mu, \eta)$  and  $(M', \mu', \eta')$ . A morphism of monoids is a morphism  $f : M \rightarrow M'$  such that both the following two diagrams commute

$$\begin{array}{ccc} M \otimes M & \xrightarrow{f \otimes f} & M' \otimes M' \\ \mu \downarrow & & \downarrow \mu' \\ M & \xrightarrow{f} & M' \end{array} \quad \begin{array}{ccc} \mathbb{1}_{\mathcal{C}} & \xrightarrow{\eta} & M \\ & \searrow \eta' & \downarrow f \\ & & M' \end{array}$$

**Definition 4.7.4** (Comonoid Object). Let  $M \in \mathcal{C}$ ,  $M$  together with a comultiplication  $\Delta$  and a counit  $\epsilon$  is a comonoid object iff  $(M, \mu, \eta)$  a monoid object in  $\mathcal{C}^{op}$  (see 3) such that  $\mu = \Delta^{op}$  and  $\eta = \epsilon^{op}$ . Straightforwardly, the definition we gave for monoid object, but with all the arrows inverted.

**Definition 4.7.5** (Bimonoid Object). A bimonoid object in a monoidal category  $\mathcal{C}$  is simultaneously a monoid and a comonoid object in  $\mathcal{C}$  in a compatible way. It has a unit  $\eta : \mathbb{1}_{\mathcal{C}} \rightarrow M$  and a counit  $\epsilon : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathbb{1}_{\mathcal{C}}$ , a multiplication  $\mu : M \otimes M \rightarrow M$  and a comultiplication  $\Delta : M \rightarrow M \otimes M$  such that comultiplication and multiplication are morphisms of monoids. In the case of comultiplication, this means that given a monoid object  $(M \otimes M, \mu', \eta')$  with  $\mu' : (M \otimes M) \otimes (M \otimes M) \rightarrow M \otimes M$  and  $\eta' : M \otimes M \rightarrow \mathbb{1}_{\mathcal{C}}$  both the following diagrams commute

$$\begin{array}{ccc} M \otimes M & \xrightarrow{\Delta \otimes \Delta} & (M \otimes M) \otimes (M \otimes M) \\ \mu \downarrow & & \downarrow \mu' \\ M & \xrightarrow{\Delta} & M \otimes M \end{array} \quad \begin{array}{ccc} \mathbb{1}_{\mathcal{C}} & \xrightarrow{\eta} & M \\ & \searrow \eta' & \downarrow \Delta \\ & & M \otimes M \end{array}$$

We leave the case of the counit for the reader.

**Definition 4.7.6** (Frobenius Algebra). A Frobenius algebra in an arbitrary monoidal category  $\mathcal{C}$  is simultaneously a monoid and a comonoid object in  $\mathcal{C}$  with a compatibility condition different from the one above:

$$(id \otimes \mu) \circ (\Delta \otimes id) = \Delta \circ \mu = (\mu \otimes id) \circ (id \otimes \Delta)$$

called the Frobenius relation.

**Definition 4.7.7** (Group Object). A group object in a cartesian monoidal category  $\mathcal{C}$  is a monoid object  $M$  that also has an inverse map  $(-)^{-1} : M \rightarrow M$  such that the following diagram commutes, meaning that the inverse behave as expected

$$\begin{array}{ccc} M & \xrightarrow{(-)^{-1} \times id_M} & M \times M \\ id_M \times (-)^{-1} \downarrow & \searrow id_M & \downarrow \mu \\ M \times M & \xrightarrow{\mu} & M \end{array}$$

**Example 4.7.8.** • A topological group is a group object in  $\mathbf{Top}$

- A Lie group is a group object in  $\mathbf{SmoothMfld}$
- A group is a group object in  $\mathbf{Set}$

## 4.8 Symmetric monoidal categories

In order to get the categorical parallel of a commutative monoid, we need to define a *symmetric* monoidal category. We want to achieve something similar to  $a \cdot b = b \cdot a$  in a monoid. However, we will not characterize this behavior with strict identities, but with a natural isomorphism<sup>24</sup>. Given the functor

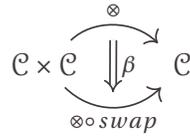
$$swap : \mathcal{C} \times \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{C} \times \mathcal{C}$$

$$swap : (X, Y) \mapsto (Y, X)$$

$$swap : (f, g) \mapsto (g, f)$$

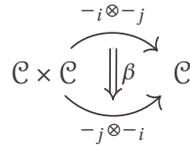
<sup>24</sup>Just as we did for associativity and unitality.

we could try to achieve our objective with a natural isomorphism  $\beta : \otimes \rightarrow \otimes \circ swap$  that can be visualized in the category of all categories  $\mathcal{C}at$  with the following diagram

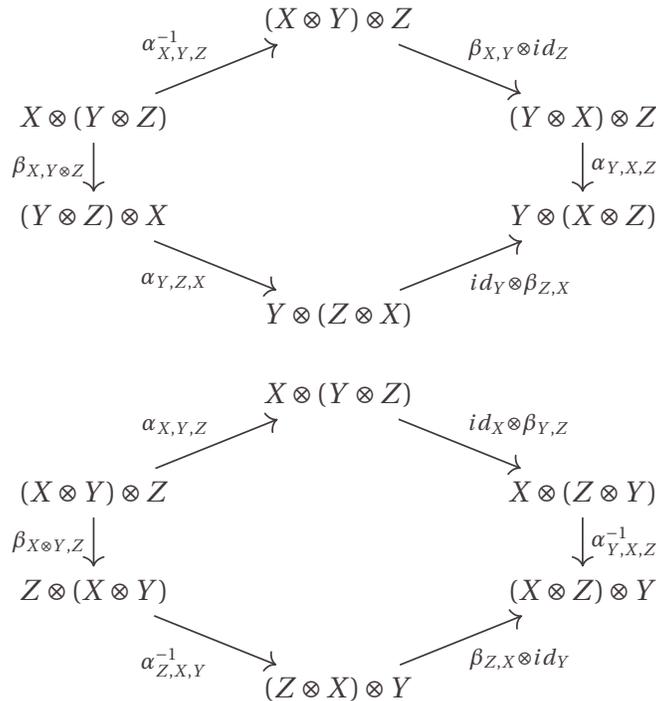


However, this does not characterize an actually symmetric structure, but rather a *braiding*, meaning that inverting two times the order of two tensor multiplied elements, i.e. objects or morphisms, does not necessarily equal the original tensor product. What this means will become clearer with the example of the braid group and the definition of symmetric monoidal category.

**Definition 4.8.1.** A braiding on a monoidal category is a natural transformation  $\beta$  with components  $\beta_{X,Y} : X \otimes Y \Rightarrow Y \otimes X$



In addition, we need to impose some compatibility conditions with the associator:



The latter two diagrams are known as the hexagon diagrams. We call such categories braided monoidal.

A braided monoidal category is *not* the category corresponding to an abelian monoid. A special type of braided monoidal category is: the symmetric monoidal category.

**Definition 4.8.2.** A symmetric monoidal category is a braided monoidal category  $(\mathcal{C}, \otimes, \mathbb{1}_{\mathcal{C}}, \alpha, \lambda, \rho, \beta)$  such that  $\beta^2 = id$  (i.e.  $\beta_{y,x} \circ \beta_{x,y} = id$ ).

**Example 4.8.3.**

- All the previous examples of monoidal categories!  $(\text{Vect}, \oplus)$ ,  $(\text{AbGrp}, \otimes)$ , ...
- Importantly for us the category of bimodules  $BMod$ .
- The category of algebras over a module.

The following theorem assures us of the associativity of higher products that we had mentioned and also generalizes this result to braided and symmetric categories.

**Theorem 4.8.4** (MacLane’s coherence theorem). *In any monoidal category, any formal diagram, i.e. a diagram made up just of associators, unitors (and braidings, in the case of braided and symmetric monoidal categories) commutes.*

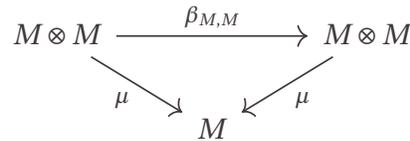
We do not provide the proof here but refer to chapter 7 of [Lan71]. The analogy in a monoid is that it does not make a difference however I put my parentheses:

$$(a_1 a_2)((a_3 a_4) a_5) = ((a_1 (a_2 a_3)) a_4) a_5$$

but instead of an equality we have objects equivalent up to isomorphisms given by associators, unitors, etc... note that we could have more than one way to compose unitors, e.g. in the diagram we previously imposed as conditions, but these will all form a commutative diagram and hence be equivalent.

Earlier on we defined a monoid object (4.7.2) in a monoidal category, now in a symmetric monoidal category we can also define a commutative monoid object.

**Definition 4.8.5** (Commutative Monoid Object). A commutative monoid object, is a monoid object in a symmetric monoidal category for which additionally the following diagram commutes



**Example 4.8.6.** A commutative monoid object is a

- commutative monoid when in  $(\text{Set}, \times)$ ,
- commutative algebra when in  $(\text{Vect}_k, \otimes)$ ,
- *strict* symmetric monoidal category when in  $(\text{Cat}, \times)$ ,
- commutative topological monoids in  $(\text{Top}, \times)$ .

**Definition 4.8.7** (Cocommutative Comonoid Object). Let  $(M, \Delta, \epsilon)$  be a comonoid object (4.7.4) in a symmetric monoidal category  $\mathcal{C}$ . It is cocommutative iff  $(M, \mu, \eta, \beta_{M,M})$  a commutative monoid object in  $\mathcal{C}^{op}$  (see 3) such that  $\mu = \Delta^{op}$ ,  $\eta = \epsilon^{op}$  and  $\beta_{M,M}^{op} = \beta_{M,M}$ . Straightforwardly, the definition we gave for commutative monoid object, but with all the arrows inverted.

**Definition 4.8.8** (Commutative Bimonoid Object). A commutative bimonoid object in a symmetric monoidal category  $\mathcal{C}$  is a bimonoid object (4.7.5) such that the underlying monoid object is commutative. Note that the underlying comonoid object is cocommutative if and only if the underlying monoid object is commutative.

**Definition 4.8.9** (Commutative Frobenius Algebra). A commutative Frobenius algebra in a symmetric monoidal category  $\mathcal{C}$  is a Frobenius algebra whose monoid structures is commutative (this also implies that the comonoid structure is cocommutative).

We need a notion of homomorphism between symmetric monoidal categories, a suitable definition of functor.

**Definition 4.8.10** (Symmetric monoidal functor). Let  $\mathcal{B}, \mathcal{C}$  be symmetric monoidal categories. A symmetric monoidal functor is a functor  $F : \mathcal{B} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  compatible with all of the structure:

- an isomorphism taking the monoidal unit in  $\mathcal{C}$  to the monoidal unit in  $\mathcal{B}$ :  $\mathbb{1}_{\mathcal{C}} \xrightarrow{1_F} F(\mathbb{1}_{\mathcal{B}})$
- a natural isomorphism respecting the tensor product:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & F(- \otimes -) & \\ & \curvearrowright & \\ \mathcal{B} \times \mathcal{B} & \uparrow \psi & \mathcal{C} \\ & \curvearrowleft & \\ & F(-) \otimes F(-) & \end{array}$$

such that it interacts reasonably with the associator by making the following diagram commute for every  $X, Y, Z \in \mathcal{C}$

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} (F(X) \otimes F(Y)) \otimes F(Z) & \xrightarrow{\psi_{X,Y} \otimes id_{F(Z)}} & F(X \otimes Y) \otimes F(Z) & \xrightarrow{\psi_{X \otimes Y, Z}} & F((X \otimes Y) \otimes Z) \\ \downarrow \alpha_{F(X), F(Y), F(Z)} & & & & \downarrow F(\alpha_{X,Y,Z}) \\ F(X) \otimes (F(Y) \otimes F(Z)) & \xrightarrow{id_{F(X)} \otimes \psi_{Y,Z}} & F(X) \otimes F(Y \otimes Z) & \xrightarrow{\psi_{X, Y \otimes Z}} & F(X \otimes (Y \otimes Z)) \end{array}$$

it interacts well with the unit<sup>25</sup> by making the following diagram also commute for every  $X \in \mathcal{C}$

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbb{1}_{\mathcal{C}} \otimes F(X) & \xrightarrow{\lambda_{F(X)}} & F(X) \\ \phi \otimes id_{F(X)} \downarrow & & \uparrow F(\lambda_X) \\ F(\mathbb{1}_{\mathcal{B}}) \otimes F(X) & \xrightarrow{\psi_{\mathbb{1}, X}} & F(\mathbb{1}_{\mathcal{B}} \otimes X) \end{array}$$

finally we just need a commutative diagram for all  $X, Y \in \mathcal{C}$  specifying how it interacts with the braiding

$$\begin{array}{ccc} F(X) \otimes F(Y) & \xrightarrow{\beta_{F(X), F(Y)}} & F(Y) \otimes F(X) \\ \psi_{X,Y} \downarrow & & \downarrow \psi_{Y,X} \\ F(X \otimes Y) & \xrightarrow{F(\beta_{X,Y})} & F(Y \otimes X) \end{array}$$

This notion will be central in this course since a TFT is just a symmetric monoidal functor with a special domain: the cobordism category.

**Example 4.8.11.**

<sup>25</sup>We just need the diagram for one unit since in a symmetric monoidal category  $\lambda = \rho$ . We chose arbitrarily to give the diagram for the left unit

1. The path-connected component functor (1)  $\pi_0 : (\text{Top}, \times) \rightarrow (\text{Set}, \times)$  is a symmetric monoidal functor.
2. ...

We also need a suitable notion of natural transformation between symmetric monoidal functors.

**Definition 4.8.12** ((Symmetric) Monoidal Natural Transformation). Given monoidal functors  $(F, \psi, \phi)$  and  $(G, \xi, \gamma)$  from monoidal categories  $\mathcal{C}$  to  $\mathcal{D}$ , a natural transformation  $\eta : F \Rightarrow G$  is monoidal if and only if the two following diagrams commute

$$\begin{array}{ccc} F(X) \otimes F(Y) & \xrightarrow{\eta_X \otimes \eta_Y} & G(X) \otimes G(Y) \\ \psi_{X,Y} \downarrow & & \downarrow \xi_{X,Y} \\ F(X \otimes Y) & \xrightarrow{\eta_{X \otimes Y}} & G(X \otimes Y) \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbb{1}_{\mathcal{D}} & & \\ \phi \downarrow & \searrow \gamma & \\ F(\mathbb{1}_{\mathcal{C}}) & \xrightarrow{\eta_{\mathbb{1}_{\mathcal{C}}}} & G(\mathbb{1}_{\mathcal{C}}) \end{array}$$

No other conditions are needed to be specified for a symmetric monoidal natural transformation, a monoidal natural transformation between symmetric monoidal functors.

**Example 4.8.13.**

- Let  $\mathbb{Z}[-] : \text{Set} \rightarrow \text{AbGrp}$  be the free functor<sup>26</sup> generating free groups from sets. Define  $\mathbb{Z}[- \times -] : \text{Set} \rightarrow \text{AbGrp}$ , the free functor generating free groups out of cartesian products in  $\text{Set}$ , and  $\mathbb{Z}[-] \otimes \mathbb{Z}[-]$ , the free functor first generating free groups and then tensor-multiply them with the tensor product in  $\text{AbGrp}$ . There is a monoidal natural isomorphism  $\alpha$  between them,  $\forall A, B \in \text{Set}, \mathbb{Z}[A \times B] \cong \mathbb{Z}[A] \otimes \mathbb{Z}[B]$ . The notation  $\mathbb{Z}[-]$  comes from the fact that abelian groups are exactly modules on the integers, the categories of abelian groups and of modules on the integers are not just equivalent categories, but isomorphic, something very rare.
- Let  $V \in \text{Vect}_k$ . Then  $V \rightarrow V^{**}$  are the components of...
- The determinant...
- There is a monoidal natural isomorphism between  $id_{\text{Grp}}$  and  $\text{Grp} \xrightarrow{op} \text{Grp}, G \mapsto G^{op}$ , the functor sending every group  $(G, *)$  to its opposite group, i.e.  $(G^{op}, *^{op})$ , where  $a *^{op} b = b * a$ .

*Remark.* One way in which (symmetric) monoidal natural transformations are important is that they let us define a suitable notion of equivalence between (symmetric) monoidal categories. This will be fundamental in a forthcoming section (6).

<sup>26</sup>A free functor is a left adjoint to the forgetful functor.

**Definition 4.8.14** (Monoidal Equivalence). There is a (symmetric) monoidal equivalence between (symmetric) monoidal categories  $\mathcal{C}$  and  $\mathcal{D}$  if and only if there are (symmetric) monoidal functors  $F, G : \mathcal{D} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  and (symmetric) monoidal natural isomorphisms  $G \circ F \stackrel{\epsilon}{\cong} id_{\mathcal{C}}$  and  $F \circ G \stackrel{\eta}{\cong} id_{\mathcal{D}}$ .

*Remark.* There is a strict 2-category  $\text{SymmMonCat}$  similar to  $\text{Cat}$  (see section 4.5), where 1-morphisms are symmetric monoidal functors and 2-morphisms are symmetric monoidal natural transformations.

**Notation.** Note that then  $\text{Hom}_{\text{SymmMonCat}}(\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{D})$  is a special functor category. A functor category where objects are symmetric monoidal functors. An alternative way to denote  $\text{Hom}_{\text{SymmMonCat}}(\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{D})$  is  $\text{Fun}^{\otimes}(\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{D})$ .

We have previously seen (2) that a linear representation of a group  $G$  is just a functor  $\mathbf{B}G \rightarrow \text{Vect}_k$ . More generally, some, e.g. [Koc03, p. 34 ], give a definition of linear representation for symmetric monoidal categories:

**Definition 4.8.15** (Linear Representation). Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a symmetric monoidal category. A linear representation of such category is a symmetric monoidal functor

$$\mathcal{C} \rightarrow \text{Vect}_k$$

Such functors are the objects of the category of representation of  $\mathcal{C}$  whereas symmetric monoidal natural transformations are the morphisms,

$$\text{Rep}(\mathcal{C}) = \text{Fun}^{\otimes}(\mathcal{C}, \text{Vect}_k) \tag{4.7}$$

### 4.8.1 Homotopy coherent monoid objects: $\mathbb{E}_n$ -algebras

This outlook is based on [Tan22], [MG24] and [Max21]. It has two motivations:

1. understand how we can define (symmetric/braided) monoidal categories internally to  $\text{Cat}$
2. provide the necessary machinery to sensibly talk about spectra and  $\mathbb{E}_n$  spaces in  $\mathbf{B}$

A monoid object in  $\text{Cat}^{27}$  is a strict monoidal category. Take a look at associativity for instance: a monoid object  $\mathcal{C} \in \text{Cat}$  makes the following diagram commute strictly

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 (\mathcal{C} \times \mathcal{C}) \times \mathcal{C} & \xrightarrow{\alpha_{\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{C}, \mathcal{C}}} & \mathcal{C} \times (\mathcal{C} \times \mathcal{C}) & \xrightarrow{id_{\mathcal{C}} \times \mu} & \mathcal{C} \times \mathcal{C} \\
 \mu \times id_M \downarrow & & & & \downarrow \mu \\
 \mathcal{C} \times \mathcal{C} & \xrightarrow{\mu} & & & \mathcal{C}
 \end{array}$$

This means that if we take  $X, Y, Z \in \mathcal{C}$ , then  $(X \otimes Y) \otimes Z = X \otimes (Y \otimes Z)$ , but the tensor product in general monoidal categories is associative and unital via some specific natural isomorphisms, the associator and the two unitors! So, this definition of monoid object does not work well with our initial comparison between monoids, algebras and monoidal categories. The issue is that the definition of monoid object is tailored for 1-categories, and thus cannot regard morphisms higher than 1 and makes everything commute strictly. There is however a way to have the **morally right** notion of monoid object, meaning a monoid object that yields monoidal categories in the case of cats and more generally monoids that cohere via higher morphisms (including the ones higher than 2, given that the category in question has them). The idea is to exploit the homotopical information of the category of  $n$ -disks<sup>28</sup>, i.e. the isotopies between embeddings from disjoint unions of  $\mathbb{R}^n$ , and import it to the monoidal category we want our monoid object to be defined in via a symmetric monoidal functor. This notion is called  $\mathbb{E}_1$ -algebra for monoid objects, and  $\mathbb{E}_\infty$ -algebra for commutative ones. We can summarize the idea with the following mottos

*$\mathbb{E}_1$ -algebras are homotopy coherently associative and unital monoid objects*

*$\mathbb{E}_\infty$ -algebras are homotopy coherently commutative, associative and unital monoid objects*

And generally:

*$\mathbb{E}_n$ -algebras are homotopy-coherent monoid objects*

*that are commutative via homotopies up to the  $n$ -th order*

Now we try to sketch what being homotopy coherent means by means of an example: homotopy coherent associativity. Let  $\mathcal{A}$  be an  $\mathbb{E}_1$ -algebra in an arbitrary symmetric monoidal  $\infty$ -category  $\mathcal{C}$ , let  $W, X, Y, Z \in \mathcal{A}$  and let us denote the multiplication of such algebra as  $\cdot : \mathcal{A} \otimes \mathcal{A} \rightarrow \mathcal{A}$ . Then,

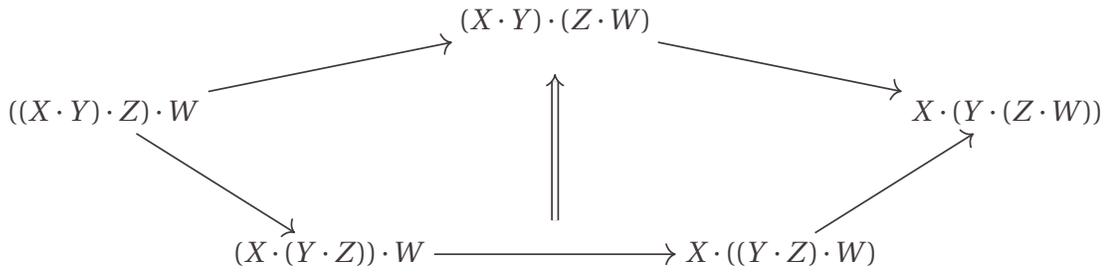
- there are two ways one can bracket three elements, for any  $X, Y, Z \in \mathcal{A}$  there is a 2-associator<sup>29</sup>  $\alpha : X \cdot (Y \cdot Z) \simeq (X \cdot Y) \cdot Z$  instead of the usual strict equality  $X \cdot (Y \cdot Z) \simeq (X \cdot Y) \cdot Z$

<sup>27</sup>Recall that the monoidal structure on  $\text{Cat}$  is given by the product of categories, i.e. a cartesian product in  $\text{Cat}$ .

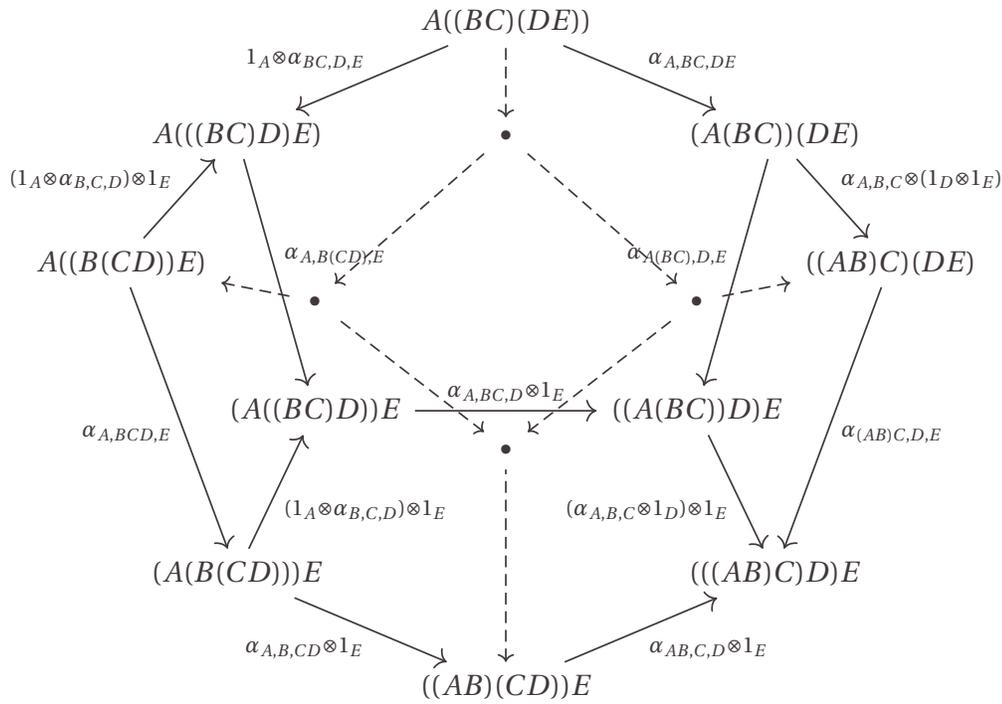
<sup>28</sup>Using disks is not the only way to do it, but it is arguably the simplest. Historically, it is done via things called operads.

<sup>29</sup>We say ' $n$ -associators' to make explicit that they are  $n$ -morphisms.

- there are five ways one can bracket 4 elements, for any  $W, X, Y, Z \in \mathcal{A}$  there is a 3-associator between two compositions of 2-associators making the following pentagon cohere



- there are 14 ways to bracket 5 elements, for any  $A, B, C, D, E \in \mathcal{A}$  there is a 4-associator between the two possible compositions of 3-associators. The next diagram is stolen from Luke Trujillo's undergraduate thesis ([Luk20]). It depicts from one point of view, the 2-associators and the objects of the coherence diagram for 3-associators that commutes via the 4-associator. In this image, the 3-associators should be arrows on the faces of the polyhedron<sup>30</sup> and the 4-associator should be a 4-morphism inside the polyhedron going from one possible composition of 3-associators to the other.



- the story then goes on and on to  $\infty$ -associators

**Notation.** A synonym for  $\mathbb{E}_1$ -algebra is  $A_\infty$ -algebra. An  $A_n$ -algebra more generally is an object internal to a category where it controls how associative is the algebra, meaning up to how many  $n$ -associators. For instance, an  $A_3$  algebra would be an algebra with 3-associators.

**Example 4.8.16.** Like a one object 1-category can be seen as a monoid, a one object  $\infty$ -category can be seen as a homotopy coherent monoid  $(\mathcal{A}, \cdot, e)$ , where

<sup>30</sup>Such polyhedra are called associahedra.

- $1\text{-Mor} = \mathcal{A}$
- $\cdot = \circ$  where  $\circ$  refers to composition of 1-morphisms
- $e = id_*$
- the higher homotopies making everything homotopy coherently associative and unital coincide

As we sketched what is homotopy coherent associativity, one can tell a similar story for homotopy coherent commutativity:

1. An  $\mathbb{E}_1$ -algebra is just a homotopy coherent monoid object, it is not commutative in any sense
  2. An  $\mathbb{E}_2$ -algebra is a homotopy coherent monoid with a 2-commutator  $X \cdot Y \rightarrow Y \cdot X$
  3. An  $\mathbb{E}_3$ -algebra is a homotopy coherent monoid with a 3-commutator between the two ways one can compose 2-commutators in order to get from  $X \cdot Y \cdot Z$  to  $Z \cdot X \cdot Y$
- $\infty$  An  $\mathbb{E}_\infty$  algebra is a homotopy coherent monoid object that is homotopy coherently commutative all the way up to  $\infty$

We recall now what an isotopy is since this will be the information in the source category of disks that we will stamp onto the category where the desired monoid object lives.

**Definition 4.8.17** (Isotopy). An isotopy is a stricter form of homotopy. Let  $f, g : X \rightarrow Y$  be embeddings. Then  $H : X \times [0, 1] \rightarrow Y$  is an isotopy if

- $H(0, -) = f$
- $H(1, -) = g$

thereby making an isotopy a homotopy and

- $\forall t \in [0, 1], H(t, -) \hookrightarrow Y$  is an embedding.

Moreover, if  $f, g$  are *smooth* embeddings and  $\forall t \in [0, 1], H(t, -) \hookrightarrow Y$  is also a smooth embedding, then  $H$  is a *smooth* isotopy.

**Definition 4.8.18** ( $\mathbb{E}_1$ -Algebra). Let  $\text{Disk}_{1,0}^{\text{fr}}$  be the category of 1-disks (see 4.6.17). Then a  $\mathbb{E}_1$ -algebra is a symmetric monoidal functor

$$\text{Disk}_1^{\text{fr}} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$$

such that if  $j, i \in \text{Hom}_{\text{Disk}_1^{\text{fr}}}(X, Y)$  are smoothly isotopic embeddings, then  $F(j) = F(i)$ , i.e. they are sent to the same morphism in  $\mathcal{C}$ . More generally.

**Notation.** A synonym for  $\mathbb{E}_1$ -algebra is  $A_\infty$ -algebra.

**Theorem 4.8.19.**  $\mathbb{E}_1$ -algebras with  $\text{Vect}_k$  as a target category correspond to  $k$ -algebras. Look into [Tan20] for a sketch of the proof.

**Theorem 4.8.20.**  $\mathbb{E}_1$ -algebras with  $\text{Cat}$  as a target category are monoidal categories.

*Proof.*

□

We summarize the correspondence with the following table

	Set	Vect <sub>k</sub>	Cat
$\mathbb{E}_1$ -algebra	monoid	$k$ -algebra	monoidal category

*Remark.* Remember that a monoid object in Cat is a *strict* monoidal category. Via  $\mathbb{E}_1$ -algebras is instead the way to precisely pin down the correspondence we laid down at the start of the section between monoidal categories,  $k$ -algebras and monoids, without collapsing monoidal categories to *strict* monoidal category, as we did with the monoid object.

We now start to define the necessary tools we need to define monoid objects that are (more) commutative.

**Definition 4.8.21** (Category of  $n$ -disks). Let  $\text{Disk}_n^{\text{fr}}$  be the  $\infty$ -category with finite disjoint unions of framed  $n$ -dimensional disks as objects, i.e.  $(\mathbb{R}^n)^{\amalg i}$  for  $i \geq 0$ , and spaces of framed smooth embeddings (with the compact-open topology) as Hom-objects, e.g.  $\text{Hom}_{\text{Disk}_n^{\text{fr}}}(\mathbb{R}^n \amalg \mathbb{R}^n, \mathbb{R}^n)$ .

**Definition 4.8.22** ( $\mathbb{E}_n$  algebra). Fix a symmetric monoidal  $\infty$ -category  $\mathcal{C}$ . For any  $n \geq 1$ , an  $\mathbb{E}_n$ -algebra in  $\mathcal{C}$  is a symmetric monoidal functor

$$\text{Disk}_n^{\text{fr}} \xrightarrow{A} \mathcal{C}$$

This is actually an algebra because it induces a parametrized family of  $i$ -ary multiplications

$$\text{Hom}_{\text{Disk}_n^{\text{fr}}}((\mathbb{R}^n)^{\amalg i}, \mathbb{R}^n) \xrightarrow{A} \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{C}}(A(\mathbb{R}^n)^{\otimes i}, A(\mathbb{R}^n))$$

Which do not compose strictly! But up to the higher isotopies of the mappig space in  $\text{Disk}_n^{\text{fr}}$ !

In short, such  $\mathbb{E}_n$ -algebras allow us to define objects internal to categories up to coherent homotopies.

$\mathbb{E}_n$ -algebras in a symmetric monoidal  $\infty$ -category  $\mathcal{C}$  form an  $\infty$ -category

$$\text{Alg}_{\mathbb{E}_n} := \text{Fun}^{\otimes}(\text{Disk}_n^{\text{fr}}, \mathcal{C})$$

Similarly to how monoid objects internal to a category  $\mathcal{C}$  form a category  $\text{Mon}(\mathcal{C})$ , e.g.  $\text{Mon}(\text{Set}) = \text{Mon}$  (the usual category of monoids).

	Set	Vect <sub>k</sub>	Cat
$\mathbb{E}_1$ -algebra	monoid	$k$ -algebra	monoidal category
$\mathbb{E}_2$ -algebra	commutative monoid	commutative $k$ -algebra	braided monoidal category
$\mathbb{E}_3$ -algebra	commutative monoid	commutative $k$ -algebra	symmetric monoidal category
$\mathbb{E}_4$ -algebra	commutative monoid	commutative $k$ -algebra	symmetric monoidal category
...	...	...	...
$\mathbb{E}_{\infty}$ -algebra	commutative monoid	commutative $k$ -algebra	symmetric monoidal category

Set and  $\text{Vect}_k$  cannot detect the difference between  $\mathbb{E}_n$ -algebras for  $n \geq 2$  while Cat can go one step further. This is because Cat is a 2-category, and so has the necessary homotopies in order to express more fine grained notions of commutativity like braided and symmetric.

However, some categories have more homotopical information and hence are even more refined. This is one of the reasons they are the categories in which higher algebra takes place.

	$\infty$ -Grpd	$\infty$ -Cat	Sp
$\mathbb{E}_1$ -algebra	$\mathbb{E}_1$ -space	monoidal $\infty$ -category	$\mathbb{E}_1$ -ring spectrum
$\mathbb{E}_\infty$ -algebra	$\mathbb{E}_\infty$ -space	symmetric monoidal $\infty$ -category	$\mathbb{E}_\infty$ -ring spectrum

**Notation.** Sp denotes the category of spectra, see B for a definition.

**Notation.** Under the homotopy hypothesis  $\infty$ -Grpd corresponds to a nice category of spaces, hence it is sometimes denoted as  $\mathcal{S}$  for  $\mathcal{S}$ paces. Other synonyms nowadays are:

- $\infty$ -Set, because it is the category one enriches over to get  $\infty$ -categories, similarly to ordinary sets and locally small categories, and it plays a parallel role in higher algebra to set in ordinary algebra (see the table in B)
- An, standing for anima, terminology coming from condensed mathematics

**Notation.** Synonyms for  $\mathbb{E}_1$ -space are  $A_\infty$ -space and monoidal  $\infty$ -groupoid. A synonym for  $\mathbb{E}_\infty$ -space is symmetric monoidal  $\infty$ -groupoid.

*Remark.* A symmetric monoidal  $\infty$ -category is fortunately not only definable as an  $\mathbb{E}_\infty$ -algebra in  $\text{Cat}_\infty$ , else our definition of  $\mathbb{E}_n$ -algebras would have been circular! One can define them as cartesian opfibrations, see [Gro15, Section 4], or as contravariant functors from Segal's gamma category (something similar to finite pointed sets), see [HW, II.15].

**Example 4.8.23.**  $\Omega X$  is an  $\mathbb{E}_1$ -space: composition of loops induces an operation which is not strictly unital or associative, but only via homotopies. See B for a definition of loop spaces.

**Theorem 4.8.24** (Dunn additivity theorem). *The Dunn additivity theorem is a higher categorical refinement of the Eckmann-Hilton argument. The Eckmann-Hilton argument states that if there are two monoid multiplications on the same set, then they coincide and the operation is commutative. However, in categories with morphisms higher than 1, we do not just have commutativity or non-commutativity of monoid objects but shades of commutativity, and possibly infinitely many (in  $\infty$ -categories). This result roughly states that when we have two monoidal structures on an object internal to a symmetric monoidal category, they coincide and the outcome is more commutative than the two alone. More precisely, the Dunn additivity theorem states that for  $0 < n, m \leq \infty$*

$$\text{Alg}_{\mathbb{E}_n}(\text{Alg}_{\mathbb{E}_m}(\mathbb{C})) \simeq \text{Alg}_{\mathbb{E}_{m+n}}(\mathbb{C})$$

See [Jac17, 5.1.2.2] for a proof.

**Example 4.8.25.** By the Dunn additivity argument,  $n$ -iterated loop spaces are  $\text{Alg}_{\mathbb{E}_n}(\mathcal{S})$ . In particular, loop spaces which are iterated infinitely many times are  $\text{Alg}_{\mathbb{E}_\infty}(\mathcal{S})$ . Such  $\infty$ -iterated loop spaces are called infinite loop spaces, see B.0.8 for a definition.

Later we will state a result that shows that grouplike  $\mathbb{E}_n$ -spaces and  $n$ -iterated loop spaces coincide: not only every  $n$ -iterated loop space is an  $\mathbb{E}_n$ -space, but also viceversa, every  $\mathbb{E}_n$ -space is an  $n$ -iterated loop space. See B.0.11.

As one can expect, there is a way to define homotopy coherent group objects in a cartesian monoidal  $\infty$ -category, as there is a way to define group objects in a cartesian monoidal 1-category. Nonetheless, we concentrate solely on such homotopy coherent group objects in the category of spaces because it is what we will later need in 5.1.1 to prove that invertible field theories are maps between certain spectra. See [Jac17, 5.2.6.6]<sup>31</sup> for a definition of homotopy coherent group objects in full generality, i.e. in any cartesian monoidal  $\infty$ -category.

**Definition 4.8.26** (Grouplike  $\mathbb{E}_n$ -space). An  $\mathbb{E}_n$ -algebra in the category of spaces  $A \in \text{Alg}_{\mathbb{E}_n}(\mathcal{S})$ , i.e. an  $\mathbb{E}_n$ -space, is grouplike, if it lands in the category of groups  $\text{Grp} \subset \text{Mon}$  when sent via the composition of

- the functor  $\pi_0 : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \text{Set}$ , sending objects in groupoids to their isomorphism classes<sup>32</sup>
- and the one forgetting all the commutative structure, but just remembering the homotopy-coherent associativity<sup>33</sup>

such composition of morphisms can be visualized with the following diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 \text{Alg}_{\mathbb{E}_n}(\mathcal{S}) & \xrightarrow{\quad} & \text{Alg}_{\mathbb{E}_1}(\text{Set}) \simeq \text{Mon} \\
 & \searrow \text{Alg}_{\mathbb{E}_n}(\pi_0) & \nearrow \text{forget} \\
 & \text{Alg}_{\mathbb{E}_n}(\text{Set}) & 
 \end{array}$$

One may denote the subcategory of grouplike  $\mathbb{E}_n$ -spaces with  $\text{Alg}_{\mathbb{E}_n}^{\text{gp}}(\mathcal{S}) \subset \text{Alg}_{\mathbb{E}_n}(\mathcal{S})$

**Example 4.8.27.**  $\Omega X$  is not just an  $\mathbb{E}_1$ -space, but also a grouplike  $\mathbb{E}_1$ -space since the inversion of based loops is homotopy equivalent to the constant map on the point, or more rigorously, recall that  $\pi_0(\Omega X) = \pi_1(X)$  and that the fundamental group is indeed a group,  $\pi_1(X) \in \text{Grp}$ . Moreover,  $n$ -iterated loop spaces are grouplike  $\mathbb{E}_n$ -spaces and in particular infinite loop spaces are grouplike  $\mathbb{E}_\infty$ -spaces for the same reason that  $\Omega X$  a grouplike  $\mathbb{E}_1$ -space, since after applying  $\pi_0$  we forget all the homotopy-coherent commutativity. Alternatively, this holds also by the Dunn additivity theorem (4.8.24).

*Remark.* Grouplike  $\mathbb{E}_\infty$ -spaces in the category of spaces are Picard  $\infty$ -groupoids! The intuition is that the  $\mathbb{E}_\infty$  provides the symmetric monoidal structure and being grouplike provides the invertibility objects.

*Notation.* Sometimes grouplike  $\mathbb{E}_\infty$ -spaces are called abelian  $\infty$ -groups because:

- $\infty$ -groupoids are also known as  $\infty$ -sets
- group objects in  $\text{Set}$  are groups
- group objects (in the morally right sense, i.e. grouplike  $\mathbb{E}_1$ -algebras) in  $\infty - \text{Set}$ , aka  $\infty\text{-Grpd}$ , are monoidal groupoids with invertible objects, which are usually called  $\infty$ -groups

<sup>31</sup>Note that there is a typo, instead of 'Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be an  $\infty$ -category which admits finite products.' there should be 'Let  $\mathcal{X}$  be an  $\infty$ -category which admits finite products.'

<sup>32</sup>The notation is no coincidence: under the homotopy hypothesis this functor in the category of spaces and the one sending points to their path-connected components are the same.

<sup>33</sup>Similarly to a forgetful functor from the category of commutative monoids to the category of monoids.

- abelian groups are groups where the operation is commutative and grouplike  $\mathbb{E}_\infty$ -spaces are  $\infty$ -groups where the operation is homotopy coherently commutative

Such objects are interesting for us because invertible field theories are equivalently maps of such grouplike  $\mathbb{E}_\infty$ -spaces! See 5.1.1.

### Factorization homology

This outlook is based mainly on [MG24, 10.5] and secondarily on [AF19],[Sch14] and [Tan20].

We now briefly sketch what is factorization homology because it is a central tool in the investigation of topological field theories. Factorization homology in general is a bridge<sup>34</sup> between differential topology and higher algebra. It takes a geometric input, i.e. an  $n$ -manifold, and higher algebraic data from a symmetric monoidal  $\infty$ -category, i.e. an  $\mathbb{E}_n$ -algebra or a stack over  $\mathbb{E}_n$ -algebra<sup>35</sup>.

Roughly, it can be seen as

- a homology theory for (framed) manifolds with coefficients in  $\mathbb{E}_n$ -algebras (see [AF15])
- a way of integrating  $\mathbb{E}_n$ -algebras<sup>36</sup> over a manifold in the same sense that ordinary homology  $H(M, A)$  is given by integrating an abelian group  $A$  over a space  $M$  (see [AF15])
- an extended<sup>37</sup> topological field theory (see [Sch14], [Lur09, 4.1] and [AF15])

**Definition 4.8.28** (Factorization homology). Given an  $\mathbb{E}_n$ -algebra  $A \in \text{Alg}_{\mathbb{E}_n}(\mathbb{C})$ , its factorization homology is the left Kan extension<sup>38</sup>

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \text{Disk}_n^{\text{fr}} & \xrightarrow{A} & \mathbb{C} \\ \downarrow & \dashrightarrow_{f_{(-)} A} & \uparrow \\ \text{Mfld}_n^{\text{fr}} & & \end{array}$$

This means that the factorization homology of  $A$  over a manifold  $M \in \text{Mfld}_n^{\text{fr}}$  is given by

$$\int_M A := \text{colim}((\text{Disk}_n^{\text{fr}})_{/M} \xrightarrow{\text{forget}} \text{Disk}_n^{\text{fr}} \xrightarrow{A} \mathbb{C})$$

Where  $(\text{Disk}_n^{\text{fr}})_{/M}$  denotes the slice category over  $M$ , meaning where the objects are morphisms from objects in  $\text{Disk}_n^{\text{fr}}$  into  $M$  and the morphisms are morphisms between sources of morphisms into  $M$  with reasonable commutativity conditions. More precisely: given  $X, Y \in \text{Disk}_n^{\text{fr}}$ ,  $f : X \rightarrow M$  and  $g : Y \rightarrow M$ , then a morphism from  $f$  to  $g$  is a morphism  $h : X \rightarrow Y$  such that  $f = h \circ g$ . The forgetful functor forgets the slice structure.

<sup>34</sup>This metaphor is not original. We stole it from the abstract of Hiro Lee Tanaka’s talk <https://www.mpim-bonn.mpg.de/node/6147>.

<sup>35</sup>Or more general values, see [AFR20]

<sup>36</sup>Or  $(\infty, n)$ -categories, see [AFR20].

<sup>37</sup>If you do not know what an extended TFT is, it might be helpful to check out 6.6.

<sup>38</sup>We spell out the definition but see [Tan20, Section 3.6.1] for a better explanation of what is a left Kan extension for  $\infty$ -categories.

One way in which it is a homology theory for manifolds is that every homology theory  $H$  for framed  $n$ -manifolds is given by factorization homology with coefficients in the  $\mathbb{E}_n$ -algebra  $H(\mathbb{R}^n)$ , see [AF15].

**Example 4.8.29.** Hochschild homology is a factorization homology over  $S^1 \in \text{Mfld}_1^{\text{fr}}$ .

**Definition 4.8.30** (Factorization algebra). Recall that a partially ordered set can be seen as a category where the arrows are given by the  $\leq$  relation. The open subsets of a space generally and in particular of a manifold form a poset with respect to the inclusion relation. Given an  $\mathbb{E}_n$ -algebra  $A \in \text{Alg}_{\mathbb{E}_n}(\mathcal{C})$ , a manifold  $M$  and an open set  $U \in \text{Opens}(M)$  we can define what a factorization algebra is, it is a functor

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Opens}(M) &\rightarrow \mathcal{C} \\ U &\mapsto \int_U A \end{aligned}$$

Such objects are also very important for the study of TFTs. For instance, they provide a bridge between topological field theories and a dual approach to the formalization of quantum field theories: algebraic quantum field theories. See 6.3 for a sketch of what this approach is and [CG23] for more on factorization algebras in other areas of mathematics and physics and in particular as a connection between AQFTs and TFTs.

To see how it can define an extended TFT, note that  $\text{Bord}_n$  is just a special category of manifolds and that the factorization homology of an  $\mathbb{E}_n$ -algebra  $A \in \text{Alg}_{\mathbb{E}_n}(\mathcal{C})$  is a functor

$$\int_{(-)} A : \text{Mfld}_n^{\text{fr}} \rightarrow \text{Fact}_n \subset \mathcal{C}$$

where  $\text{Fact}_n$  denotes the subcategory of factorization algebras in  $\mathcal{C}$ . Hence, one can intuit that there is a way to construct a factorization homology of an  $\mathbb{E}_n$ -algebra as a symmetric monoidal functor

$$\int_{(-)} A : \text{Bord}_n^{\text{fr}} \rightarrow \text{Fact}_n \subset \mathcal{C}$$

where  $\text{Bord}_n$  is the extended category of bordisms (see 6.6) and thus a TFT!

Check out [Sch14] for a detailed treatment.

## 4.8.2 Interlude on bicategories

**Definition 4.8.31** (Delooping of a Monoidal Category). Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a monoidal category. The delooping category  $\mathbf{BC}$  is a one object 2-category with:

- $\text{ob}(\mathbf{BC}) = *$
- $1\text{-mor}(\mathbf{BC}) = \text{ob}(\mathcal{C})$
- $2\text{-mor}(\mathbf{BC}) = \text{mor}(\mathcal{C})$

Composition of 2-morphisms is given by the usual composition of morphisms between objects in  $\mathcal{C}$ . The composition of 1-morphisms is given by the tensor product. This makes sense since there is a monoidal unit  $1_{\mathcal{C}}$  that works as the identity arrow for any object, since it is left and right unital for any object and the tensor product is associative. However, in monoidal categories associativity and unitality hold up to isomorphism and this is witnessed by the associator and left/right unitors!

*Remark.* Notice that the delooping  $\mathbf{BC}$  is generally not a 2-category in the same sense that  $\mathbf{Cat}$  and  $\mathbf{SymmMonCat}$  are. 1-morphisms compose strictly in  $\mathbf{Cat}$ , "on the nose", i.e.  $F \circ (G \circ H) = (F \circ G) \circ H$  and  $F \circ id_{\mathcal{D}} = F = id_{\mathcal{D}} \circ F$ ; whereas 1-morphisms in  $\mathbf{BC}$  compose up to natural isomorphism, more precisely up to the associator and left/right unitors.

**Definition 4.8.32** (Bicategory). A bicategory  $\mathcal{B}$  consists of

- A collection of objects  $\text{ob}(\mathcal{B})$ , whose elements  $X, Y, Z$  are also called 0-cells
- For each objects  $X, Y$ , a 1-category  $\text{Hom}_{\mathcal{B}}(X, Y)$ , whose objects  $f, g, \dots$  are called 1-cells or 1-morphisms and whose morphisms  $\alpha, \beta, \dots$  are called 2-cells or 2-morphisms; composition of (2-)morphisms in this category is also called vertical composition
- For any three objects  $X, Y, Z$  there are composition functors, also called horizontal composition

$$\begin{aligned} \circ_{X,Y,Z} : \text{Hom}(Y, Z) \times \text{Hom}(X, Y) &\rightarrow \text{Hom}(X, Z) \\ (f, g) &\mapsto f \circ g \\ (\alpha, \beta) &\mapsto \alpha \circ \beta \end{aligned}$$

in the context of bicategories we denote composition of functors with  $\circ$  instead of the usual  $\circ$  in order to not get confused between a composition functor and a composition of functors

- For every object  $X$  there is an identity functor from the one-object category<sup>39</sup>  $\mathbb{1}_{\mathbf{Cat}}$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{identity}_X : \mathbb{1}_{\mathbf{Cat}} &\rightarrow \text{Hom}(X, X) \\ * &\mapsto id_X \end{aligned}$$

we name the image of the single object the identity 1-morphism, i.e.  $\text{identity}_X(*) = id_X$

- There are natural isomorphisms  $a, r, l$  expressing associativity and unitality of the composition functor:
  - associativity, as a natural isomorphism in  $\mathbf{Cat}$

$$a : \circ_{W,X,Y} \circ (\circ_{X,Y,Z} \times id_{\text{Hom}(W,X)}) \xrightarrow{\cong} (id_{\text{Hom}(Y,Z)} \times id_{W,X,Y}) \circ \circ_{W,Y,Z}$$

given  $h : W \rightarrow X$ ,  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  and  $g : Y \rightarrow Z$ ,  $a$  is a 2-isomorphism in  $\mathcal{B}$

$$a_{g,f,h} : g \circ (f \circ h) \xrightarrow{\cong} (g \circ f) \circ h$$

- right unitality, as a natural isomorphism in  $\mathbf{Cat}$ <sup>40</sup>

$$r : \circ_{X,Y,Y} \circ (id_{\text{Hom}(X,Y)} \times \text{identity}_Y) \xrightarrow{\cong} \rho_{\text{Hom}(X,Y)}^{\mathbf{Cat}}$$

and as a 2-isomorphism in  $\mathcal{B}$

$$r_f : f \circ id_Y \xrightarrow{\cong} f$$

<sup>39</sup>This is the terminal object of  $\mathbf{Cat}$  and thereby monoidal unit of the cartesian monoidal category  $(\mathbf{Cat}, \times, \mathbb{1}_{\mathbf{Cat}})$  with the cartesian product as the tensor product. With  $\text{ob}(\mathbb{1}_{\mathbf{Cat}}) = \{*\}$  and  $\text{Hom}_{\mathbf{Cat}}(*, *) = id_*$ .

<sup>40</sup>Note that  $\rho_{\text{Hom}(X,Y)}^{\mathbf{Cat}}$  is the component of the right unitor of the monoidal category  $(\mathbf{Cat}, \times, \mathbb{1}_{\mathbf{Cat}})$  at  $\text{Hom}(X, Y)$ .

– left unitality, as a natural isomorphism in  $\text{Cat}^{41}$

$$l : \circ_{X,X,Y} \circ (\text{identity}_X \times \text{id}_{\text{Hom}(X,Y)}) \xrightarrow{\cong} \lambda_{\text{Hom}(X,Y)}^{\text{Cat}}$$

and as a 2-isomorphism in  $\mathcal{B}$

$$l_f : \text{id}_X \circ f \xrightarrow{\cong} f$$

Such natural isomorphisms can be more clearly visualized with the following diagrams<sup>42</sup>

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \text{Hom}(Y, Z) \times \text{Hom}(X, Y) \times \text{Hom}(W, X) & \xrightarrow{\text{id}_{\text{Hom}(Y,Z)} \times \text{id}_{W,X,Y}} & \text{Hom}(Y, Z) \times \text{Hom}(W, Y) \\ \circ_{X,Y,Z} \times \text{id}_{\text{Hom}(W,X)} \downarrow & \xrightarrow{a_{W,X,Y,Z}} & \downarrow \circ_{W,Y,Z} \\ \text{Hom}(X, Z) \times \text{Hom}(W, X) & \xrightarrow{\circ_{W,X,Z}} & \text{Hom}(W, Z) \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \text{Hom}(X, Y) \times \mathbb{1}_{\text{Cat}} & & \\ \text{id}_{\text{Hom}(X,Y)} \times \text{identity}_Y \downarrow & \xrightarrow{\cong} & \\ \text{Hom}(X, Y) \times \text{Hom}(Y, Y) & \xrightarrow{\circ_{X,Y,Y}} & \text{Hom}(X, Y) \text{ wh} \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbb{1}_{\text{Cat}} \times \text{Hom}(X, Y) & & \\ \text{identity}_X \times \text{id}_{\text{Hom}(X,Y)} \downarrow & \xrightarrow{\cong} & \\ \text{Hom}(X, X) \times \text{Hom}(X, Y) & \xrightarrow{\circ_{X,X,Y}} & \text{Hom}(X, Y) \end{array}$$

These data must satisfy the following axioms: an apt version of the Mac Lane’s pentagon for the associator and the triangle identity for the unitors must commute so that the associator and left/right unitors behave reasonably (see 4.6 for such diagrams for monoidal categories and see [Sch23] for the spelled out diagrams for bicategories).

Note that in  $\mathbb{1}_{\text{Cat}}$  there is also an identity morphism of  $*$ ,  $\text{id}_*$ , that gets mapped to a 2-morphism  $\text{id}_{\text{id}_X}$

$$\text{identity}_X(\text{id}_*) = \text{id}_{\text{id}_X} : \text{id}_X \rightarrow \text{id}_X$$

The fact that  $\text{id}_*$  is unital in  $*$  ensures that  $\text{id}_{\text{id}_X}$  is unital with respect to vertical composition thanks to the functoriality of  $\text{identity}_X$ .

Bicategories are also known as weak 2-categories. Note that every strict 2-category is a bicategory where 1-morphisms compose strictly instead of up to associators and unitors; similarly to monoidal categories and strict monoidal categories

**Example 4.8.33.** A monoidal category  $\mathcal{C}$  is a one-object bicategory  $\mathbf{BC}$  where  $\mathcal{C} = \text{Hom}(\mathbf{BC})$ . A strict monoidal category is a one-object strict 2-category.

<sup>41</sup>Note that  $\lambda_{\text{Hom}(X,Y)}^{\text{Cat}}$  is the component of the left unitor of the monoidal category  $(\text{Cat}, \times, \mathbb{1}_{\text{Cat}})$  at  $\text{Hom}(X, Y)$ .

<sup>42</sup>Note that these are homotopy coherent diagrams, meaning that they **do not** commute strictly necessarily, but only up to the indicated 2-morphisms!

We now list some examples of 2-categories, to convey a more concrete intuition of the difference between bicategories and strict 2-categories. More generally, try to think how this difference between weak and strict categories carries on in higher dimensions.

**Example 4.8.34.**

1. Any strict 2-category is a bicategory but not viceversa.
2.  $\text{Cat}$  and  $\text{SymmMonCat}$  are both *strict* since functors compose strictly
3. The fundamental 2-groupoid of a topological space  $X$  is a *strict* 2-category where objects are the points in  $X$ , 1-morphisms are paths and homotopy classes of homotopies between paths are 2-morphisms.
4. Every 1-category is a strict 2-category where the only 2-morphisms are identities on 1-morphisms
5. There is a bicategory  $\text{Alg}_k^2$  where objects are algebras over a vector space, 1-morphisms are bimodules (see 4.6.16) and 2-morphisms are maps between bimodules, also known as intertwiners

**Symmetric monoidal bicategories** ✈

Now we sketch how one could define monoidal bicategories and in particular symmetric monoidal ones. The latter are important in the study of TFTs because a once-extended TFT (see 6.6) is a symmetric monoidal weak 2-functor from a category of bordisms  $\text{Bord}_{n,n-1,n-2}$ . Generally, symmetric monoidal bicategories are a pain to define because a bicategory already needs to satisfy many coherence diagrams and a symmetric monoidal structure on it even more! Take a look at [SP14, Definition 2.3] and skim through [SP14, Section 2.3]. For this reason, some try to provide other smart ways to define what is a symmetric monoidal bicategory. For instance, Mike Shulman defined them in terms of symmetric monoidal double categories [Shu10] or one could try to define them in terms of particular functors  $\Gamma^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \text{Bicat}$  as one does with symmetric monoidal  $\infty$ -categories<sup>43</sup> (see 4.8.1). In this chapter we provide definitions for monoidal bicategories and symmetric monoidal ones that rely on the  $\mathbb{E}_n$ -algebras we previously talked about, see 4.8.1.

In order to achieve this we first need to talk about the tricategory of bicategories  $\text{Bicat}$ . To talk about  $\text{Bicat}$ , we first need to talk about its 1-, 2- and 3-morphisms, so we start with that.

**Definition 4.8.35** (Weak 2-functor). A weak 2-functor, aka pseudofunctor, is the right notion of functor between bicategories.

Given two bicategories  $\mathcal{B}$  and  $\mathcal{C}$ . A weak 2-functor  $P : \mathcal{B} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  consists of

- an assignment, a function,  $\text{Ob}(\mathcal{B}) \rightarrow \text{Ob}(\mathcal{C})$
- for each hom-category  $\text{Hom}_{\mathcal{B}}(X, Y)$ , a functor  $P_{x,y} : \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{B}}(X, Y) \rightarrow \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{C}}(P(X), P(Y))$
- two invertible 2-morphisms pinning down the compositionality and unitality of the weak 2-functor

<sup>43</sup>A master student of Prof. Scheimbauer is working on this.

- and three commutative diagrams that make the interaction between the composition of bifunctors and the objects and morphisms in the bicategory reasonable

See <https://ncatlab.org/nlab/show/pseudofunctor> for a complete definition expliciting the last two points.

**Definition 4.8.36** (Pseudonatural transformation). A pseudonatural transformation is a natural transformation but where the naturality is given by a diagram that commutes via a homotopy and not strictly.

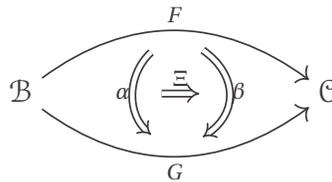
Given bicategories  $\mathcal{B}$  and  $\mathcal{C}$  and weak 2-functor  $F, G : \mathcal{B} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  a pseudonatural transformation  $\alpha : F \Rightarrow G$  consists of:

- for each  $X \in \mathcal{B}$  a 1-morphism in  $\mathcal{C}$   $\alpha_X : F(X) \rightarrow G(X)$
- for each  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  in  $\mathcal{B}$  an invertible 2-morphism in  $\mathcal{C}$ ,  $\alpha_f : G(f) \circ \alpha_X \simeq \alpha_Y \circ F(f)$  making the following diagram commute

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 F(X) & \xrightarrow{F(f)} & F(Y) \\
 \alpha_X \downarrow & \nearrow \alpha_f & \downarrow \alpha_Y \\
 G(X) & \xrightarrow{G(f)} & G(Y)
 \end{array}$$

- such that coherence conditions for the associators and unitors in  $\mathcal{C}$  are satisfied, see <https://ncatlab.org/nlab/show/pseudonatural+transformation>

**Definition 4.8.37** (Modification). A modification is a sort of natural transformation between pseudonatural transformations. You can picture a modification  $\Xi$  with the following diagram:



Given weak 2-functors  $F, G : \mathcal{B} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$ , pseudonatural transformations  $\alpha, \beta : F \Rightarrow G$ , a modification  $\Xi : \alpha \Rightarrow \beta$  consists of components for any object  $X \in \mathcal{B}$  that are 2-morphisms working as follows

- for any components of  $\alpha, \beta$ , i.e. 1-morphisms in  $\mathcal{C}$   $\alpha_X, \beta_X : F(X) \rightarrow G(X)$ , there is a component of  $\Xi$ , a 2-morphism in  $\mathcal{C}$ ,  $\Xi_X : \alpha_X \Rightarrow \beta_X$ . You can picture it like this:

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 & \alpha_X & \\
 F(X) & \xrightarrow{\quad} & G(X) \\
 & \beta_X & \\
 & \Downarrow \Xi_X & \\
 & & 
 \end{array}$$

Such components must satisfy a naturality condition. The following diagram commutes

strictly<sup>44</sup>

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 G(f) \circ \alpha_X & \xrightarrow{id_{G(f)} \circ \Xi_X} & G(f) \circ \beta_X \\
 \alpha_f \Downarrow & & \Downarrow \beta_f \\
 \alpha_Y \circ F(f) & \xrightarrow{\Xi_Y \circ id_{F(f)}} & \beta_Y \circ G(f)
 \end{array}$$

**Definition 4.8.38** (The tricategory of bicategories). The tricategory of bicategories consists of

- bicategories as objects
- weak 2-functors as 1-morphisms
- pseudonatural transformations as 2-morphisms
- modifications as 3-morphisms

As any category of categories, it is cartesian monoidal via the product of bicategories and hence symmetric monoidal<sup>45</sup>

We denote it with  $\text{Bicat}$ .

Having defined the tricategory of bicategories we can now provide the definitions for monoidal bicategories and symmetric monoidal ones.

**Definition 4.8.39** (Monoidal bicategory). A monoidal bicategory is an  $\mathbb{E}_1$ -algebra in  $\text{Bicat}$ , i.e. a symmetric monoidal functor

$$\text{Disk}_1^{\text{fr}} \rightarrow \text{Bicat}$$

**Definition 4.8.40** (Symmetric monoidal bicategory). A symmetric monoidal bicategory is an  $\mathbb{E}_{\infty \geq n \geq 4}$ -algebra in  $\text{Bicat}$ , i.e. a symmetric monoidal functor

$$\text{Disk}_{\infty \geq n \geq 4}^{\text{fr}} \rightarrow \text{Bicat}$$

This is equivalent to [GO13, Theorem 2.8].

Since  $\text{Bicat}$  is a **tricategory** and has one higher level of morphisms than  $\text{Cat}$ , we do not just have braided and symmetric monoidality, but a new shade of commutativity, called *syllaptic*.

As we did for  $\text{Cat}$  in 4.8.1 we can summarize the situation with the following table

	$\text{Bicat}$
$\mathbb{E}_1$ -algebra	monoidal bicategory
$\mathbb{E}_2$ -algebra	braided monoidal bicategory
$\mathbb{E}_3$ -algebra	syllaptic monoidal bicategory
$\mathbb{E}_4$ -algebra	symmetric monoidal bicategory
$\mathbb{E}_\infty$ -algebra	symmetric monoidal bicategory

<sup>44</sup>In some contexts, e.g. in fully extended TFTs (meaning downwards to the point and upward to infinitely many invertible morphisms), this strictness is undesirable. This is why it can be argued that  $(\infty, n)$ -categories are the **right** context to do higherer(/higher higher) category theory, meaning studying or working with  $n$ -categories.

<sup>45</sup>Recall that any cartesian product is commutative 4.6.5.

# Chapter 5

## The cobordism category

We now get to the most important example of symmetric monoidal category in this course: the symmetric monoidal category of cobordisms<sup>1</sup>. This is what will allow us to define a topological field theory.

**Notation.** Note that, if not explicitly stated we will mean *smooth* manifold when we write manifold.

**Definition 5.0.1** (Bordism Category). The objects are closed  $(n-1)$ -dimensional manifolds. A morphism from  $M$  to  $N$  is a *diffeomorphism class of bordisms* (to be soon defined) from  $M$  (*source*) to  $N$  (*target*), that is, a compact manifold with boundary  $\Sigma$  together with embeddings

$$\theta_0 : [0, 1) \times M \hookrightarrow \Sigma$$

$$\theta_1 : (-1, 0] \times N \hookrightarrow \Sigma$$

with a partition  $p : \partial\Sigma \rightarrow \{0, 1\}$  such that

$$\theta_0(0, M) = (\partial\Sigma)_0 := p^{-1}(0)$$

$$\theta_1(0, N) = (\partial\Sigma)_1 := p^{-1}(1)$$

Composition is given by gluing<sup>2</sup> bordisms together along a common boundary: if  $\Sigma$  is a morphism from  $M$  to  $N$  and  $\Sigma'$  from  $N$  to  $P$  we can define  $\Sigma' \circ \Sigma := \Sigma \cup_N \Sigma'$  as (a representative of) the composition morphism. The gluing of manifolds is associative.

In order for this to actually be a category there must be a identity morphisms for each object: take  $M$  to be a suitable manifold, we can then take  $M \times [0, 1]$  to be the identity morphism. However, one could also take  $M \times [0, 2]$  which is diffeomorphic to  $M \times [0, 1]$  but *not* strictly identical, on the nose.

That is why we took a *diffeomorphism class* of bordisms.

**Notation.**  $\text{nCob} = \text{Bord}_{n,n-1}$ , meaning that objects are closed  $(n-1)$ -dimensional manifolds and morphisms are diffeomorphism classes of bordisms. Moreover, we indicate that the closed manifolds are oriented and the bordisms orientation preserving with  $\text{Bord}_{n,n-1}^{\text{or}}$  or equivalently  $\text{nCob}^{\text{or}}$ .

Let us explicitly state what is meant by diffeomorphism of bordisms:

---

<sup>1</sup> See chapter 14 of [Fre13].

<sup>2</sup> We define bordisms with the definition with collars because it is easier to see how to glue them.

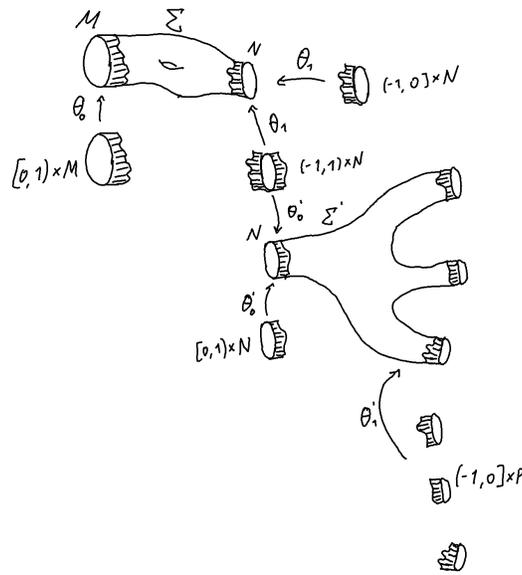


Figure 5.1: This is an illustration of gluing of two bordisms along their common boundary.

**Definition 5.0.2.** A diffeomorphism of bordisms from  $M$  to  $N$ ,  $(\Sigma, p, \theta_0, \theta_1) \rightarrow (\Sigma', p', \theta'_0, \theta'_1)$  is a diffeomorphism  $\phi : \Sigma \rightarrow \Sigma'$  of manifolds with boundary

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 & M & \\
 \theta(0, -) \nearrow & & \searrow \theta'(0, -) \\
 \Sigma & \xrightarrow{\cong} & \Sigma' \\
 \theta(-, 1) \searrow & \phi & \nearrow \theta'(-, 1) \\
 & N & 
 \end{array}$$

The commutativity of the latter diagram also implies that also extra data commute accordingly, e.g. with the partitions:

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 \partial\Sigma & \xrightarrow{\phi|_{\partial\Sigma}} & \partial\Sigma' \\
 \searrow p & & \swarrow p' \\
 & \{0, 1\} & 
 \end{array}$$

**Example 5.0.3.** We have that

$$\text{Hom}_{\text{nCob}}(\emptyset, \emptyset) = \{\text{closed } n\text{-manifolds}\} / \{\text{diffeomorphism}\}.$$

For  $n = 2$ ,  $\Sigma = S^2$  is a composition of

while a genus  $g$  surface is the composite:

which is very reminiscent of what we did in Morse theory. There we were actually also learning how the composition of bordisms works, this is called handle decomposition.

We just saw that  $\text{Bord}_{n,n-1}$  is a category. It has importantly also a symmetric monoidal structure:

- (M) The tensor product is given by the disjoint union of manifolds,  $\otimes = \amalg$ , both on objects ( $M \otimes N := M \amalg N$ ) and on morphisms ( $\Sigma \otimes \Sigma' := \Sigma \amalg \Sigma'$ ). Disjoint union is functorial since for  $\Sigma : M \rightarrow N$ ,  $\Sigma' : M' \rightarrow N'$ ,  $\Lambda : N \rightarrow P$ ,  $\Lambda' : N' \rightarrow P'$  in  $\text{Bord}_{n,n-1}$  it holds that:

- $(\Sigma \cup_N \Lambda) \amalg (\Sigma' \cup_{N'} \Lambda') = (\Sigma \amalg \Sigma') \cup_{N \amalg N'} (\Lambda \amalg \Lambda')$
- $(M \xrightarrow{M \times [0,1]} M) \amalg (M' \xrightarrow{M' \times [0,1]} M') = M \amalg M' \xrightarrow{(M \times [0,1]) \amalg (M' \times [0,1])} M \amalg M'$
- (O)  $\mathbb{1}_{\text{Bord}_{n,n-1}} = \emptyset$  (note that  $\emptyset \amalg M \neq M$ , so  $\text{Bord}_{n,n-1}$  is not a *strict* symmetric monoidal category<sup>3</sup>. However, there is an isomorphism in the category since they're clearly diffeomorphic, and any diffeomorphic manifolds are cobordant. So,  $\emptyset \amalg M \cong M$  in  $\text{Bord}_{n,n-1}$ , as we expect the monoidal unit to behave.
- (A)  $M_1 \amalg (M_2 \amalg M_3) \xrightarrow{\cong} (M_1 \amalg M_2) \amalg M_3$
- (B)  $\beta_{M,N} : M \amalg N \xrightarrow{\cong} N \amalg M$  and  $\beta^2 = id$

*Remark.* Associativity and commutativity also hold up to diffeomorphism and not strictly if one defines the disjoint union as a coproduct<sup>4</sup>: every coproduct is unique up to isomorphism<sup>5</sup>, the appropriate notion of isomorphism in the category of smooth manifolds is diffeomorphism and all diffeomorphic manifolds are cobordant.

## 5.1 Definition of topological field theories

Recall that a group homomorphism  $\Omega_n \rightarrow X$  with  $X$  also an abelian group is a bordism invariant, which is generally quite useful and interesting. Now that we have refined our tools and have a cobordism *category* instead of the cobordism *group*, the bordism invariants become symmetric monoidal functors into another symmetric monoidal category since symmetric monoidal functors are the appropriate notion of homomorphism of symmetric monoidal categories.

In particular, that's how we get a topological field theory:

**Definition 5.1.1.** A topological field theory is a symmetric monoidal functor<sup>6</sup> with source  $n\text{Cob}$  into a symmetric monoidal category  $\mathcal{C}$

$$\mathcal{Z} : n\text{Cob} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$$

### Exercise 5.1.2.

- Compare this definition to other definitions of quantum field theory.
- Skim through Atiyah's original paper [MF88], how does this definition compare to his set of axioms?

After skimming through [MF88] one might wonder why we defined the target category of a topological field to be just a general symmetric monoidal category and not specifically  $(\text{Vect}_k, \otimes, k)$ , as Atiyah did, or at least something similar, in the end we are studying topological quantum field theories! There are probably several reasons why someone would want to do so, for example for representation theoretic ones<sup>7</sup>. One of the crucial ones in

<sup>3</sup>Note that objects were *not* taken up to diffeomorphism, only morphisms.

<sup>4</sup>A coproduct is the dual notion of (cartesian) product (see 4.6.5), i.e. a coproduct in  $\mathcal{C}$  is a product in  $\mathcal{C}^{op}$ .

<sup>5</sup>One can prove this in a specular way in which we proved the uniqueness of the cartesian product, see 4.6.6.

<sup>6</sup>See 4.8.10 for the definition of symmetric monoidal functor.

<sup>7</sup>e.g. [Str22], later we will also show that one must pick categories different to  $\text{Vect}_k$  in order to get interesting 3dTFTs and connect them with the Jones polynomial from knot theory.

particular is that one of the guiding conjectures of this field, the cobordism hypothesis, is formulated and provable without mentioning specifically  $\text{Vect}_k$  as a target category. See 6.6 for more on this conjecture<sup>8</sup>

*Remark.* A TFT is a functor in a similar way that a linear representation of a group<sup>9</sup> is (see 2). We can construct the category of TFTs in an analagous way to the one we used to define the category of linear representations of a group (see 1): by constructing a functor category where the objects are TFTs (hence particular symmetric monoidal functors) and morphisms apt natural transformations between them<sup>10</sup>. The category of  $n$ -dimensional TFTs will then be  $\text{Hom}_{\text{SymmMonCat}}(\text{nCob}, \mathbb{C})$  (see 4.8 for the definition of  $\text{SymmMonCat}$ , the category of all symmetric monoidal categories). Similarly as with groups, one can have linear and non-linear representations, although linear representations appear more frequently. Typical examples of linear target categories are  $(\text{AbGrp}, \otimes)$ ,  $(\text{Mod}_R, \otimes)$ ,  $(\text{Vect}_k, \otimes)$ .

**Notation** (Category of TFTs). The category of TFTs is the functor category

$$\text{Hom}_{\text{SymmMonCat}}(\text{nCob}, \mathbb{C}) = \text{Fun}^{\otimes}(\text{nCob}, \mathbb{C}) = \text{TFT}_n(\mathbb{C}) = \text{nTFT}(\mathbb{C}).$$

This functor category is symmetric monoidal by defining the tensor product between TFTs pointwise: for  $\mathcal{Z}_1, \mathcal{Z}_2 \in \text{TFT}_n(\mathbb{C})$  and  $M \in \text{nCob}$

$$(\mathcal{Z}_1 \otimes \mathcal{Z}_2)(M) := \mathcal{Z}_1(M) \otimes \mathcal{Z}_2(M)$$

TFTs were originally defined with  $\text{Vect}$  as the target category,  $\mathcal{Z} : (\text{nCob}, \mathbb{I}) \rightarrow (\text{Vect}, \otimes)$ , see [MF88]. In this case we can use the notation in equation 4.7 and write  $\text{TFT}_n(\text{Vect}_k) = \text{Rep}(\text{Bord}_{n,n-1})$ . We can infer a few things about such TFTs:

1.  $\Sigma$  closed  $n$ -manifold, we can then view it as a bordism  $\emptyset \xrightarrow{\Sigma} \emptyset$  and then we can apply  $Z$  and we get  $Z(\emptyset) \xrightarrow{Z(\Sigma)} Z(\emptyset)$  but  $Z(\emptyset) = k$ , since that's the unit in  $\text{Vect}$ . So  $\mathcal{Z}(\Sigma)$  is a linear map from  $k$  to  $k$ , which is entirely determined by where it sends one element. We then get that  $\mathcal{Z}(\Sigma)(1)$  is a diffeomorphism invariant.

In fact, the original hope was to use TFTs to find new diffeomorphism invariants.

2. There is a "trivial" TFT which on objects acts as  $\mathcal{Z}(M) = k$  and on morphisms as  $\mathcal{Z}(\Sigma) = id_k$  and we write  $Z = 1$ .

---

<sup>8</sup>As a spoiler: the moral of the cobordism hypothesis is that "The history of the Baez-Dolan conjecture [i.e. the cobordism hypothesis] goes most directly through quantum field theory and its adaptation to low-dimensional topology. Yet in retrospect it is a theorem about the structure of manifolds in all dimensions..." [Fre12] and hence TFTs are of interest with respect to any suitable target category, not only the ones of interest from the viewpoint of physics.

<sup>9</sup>In fact, some regard it a kind of representation, check out for instance around minute 18:00 of Catharina Stroppel: The beauty of braids - from knot invariants to higher categories; or the following quote from a poster for a conference on TQFTs and their connections to representation theory and mathematical physics "...a TQFT is a symmetric monoidal functor from the cobordism category to some symmetric monoidal category. It can thus be seen as a representation of a fundamental geometric category on a target category and thereby organizes interesting algebraic structures, e.g. representations of mapping class groups, in terms of cobordism categories. ..."; or this quote from Daniel Freed "An extended topological field theory is a representation of the bordism category..." [Fre12].

<sup>10</sup>See 4.8.12 for the definition of a symmetric monoidal natural transformation.

3. An *invertible* TFT is a TFT in which  $Z(M) \cong k$  and  $Z(\Sigma)$  is an isomorphism. Which is very similar but in the trivial TFT we have chosen not only  $Z(M) \cong k$  but specifically  $Z(M) = k$ . This is related to “anomalies” in physics<sup>11</sup>.

**Example 5.1.3.** Euler characteristic ( $\rightarrow$  Euler theory)

Fix  $\lambda \in \mathbb{C}^*$ . If  $M \xrightarrow{\Sigma} N$ , then

$$Z_\lambda(\Sigma) := \lambda^{\chi(\Sigma) - \chi(M)}, \quad Z(M) = Z(N) = \mathbb{C} \quad (5.1)$$

Here functoriality follows from the following: if  $X, Y$  are open subsets of  $\Sigma$  and  $\Sigma = \text{int}(X) \cup \text{int}(Y)$ , then

$$\chi(\Sigma) = \chi(X) + \chi(Y) - \chi(X \cap Y) \quad (5.2)$$

**Definition 5.1.4.** Let  $(\mathcal{C}, \otimes, \mathbb{1}_{\mathcal{C}})$  be a monoidal category. An object  $X \in \mathcal{C}$  is invertible if there is a  $Y \in \mathcal{C}$  such that  $X \otimes Y \cong \mathbb{1}_{\mathcal{C}}$ .

**Example 5.1.5.** In  $(\text{Vect}_k, \otimes)$ ,  $X$  is invertible iff there is a vector space  $Y$  such that  $X \otimes Y \cong k$ .

**Notation.**  $\mathcal{C}^\times \subset \mathcal{C}$  subset of invertible objects and isomorphisms. We will later see that this is the underlying Picard groupoid (see 5.1.25)

**Notation.** For some symmetric monoidal category  $(\mathcal{C}, \otimes, \mathbb{1}_{\mathcal{C}})$  we sometimes abbreviate that the category  $\mathcal{C}$  is a monoidal category with tensor product  $\otimes$  by writing  $\mathcal{C}^\otimes$ . For example,  $\text{Set}^\times, \text{Set}^\Pi, \text{Vect}^\oplus, \text{Vect}^\otimes$ .

We can now rigorously define what we previously called an invertible TFT:

**Definition 5.1.6.** An invertible TFT is an invertible object in  $\text{Fun}^\otimes(\text{Bord}_{n,n-1}, \mathcal{C})$ . This is equivalent to the fact that  $\mathcal{Z}$  factors through  $\mathcal{C}^\times$ :

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \text{Bord}_{n,n-1}^\Pi & \xrightarrow{\mathcal{Z}} & \mathcal{C}^\otimes \\ & \searrow \tilde{\mathcal{Z}} & \nearrow \\ & \mathcal{C}^\times & \end{array}$$

Indeed if  $\mathcal{C}^\otimes = \text{Vect}_k^\otimes$ , invertible objects in  $\text{Vect}_k^\otimes$  are just  $k$  (up to isomorphism), so an invertible TFT  $Z$  must be such that for all  $M \in \text{Bord}_{n,n-1}$ ,  $Z(M) \otimes Z'(M) \cong k$  and so  $Z(M) \cong k \cong Z'(M)$  and so is clear why they must factor through  $\mathcal{C}^\times$ . This definition of invertible TFT is then equivalent to the one given above.

**Definition 5.1.7** (Groupoid Completion). Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a category. A groupoid completion  $(|\mathcal{C}|, i)$  is a groupoid  $|\mathcal{C}|$  with a functor  $i : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow |\mathcal{C}|$  such that if  $\mathcal{D}$  is a groupoid and  $f : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  a functor, then there is a unique map  $\tilde{f} : |\mathcal{C}| \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  such that the following diagram commutes

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathcal{C} & \xrightarrow{i} & |\mathcal{C}| \\ & \searrow f & \nearrow \tilde{f} \\ & \mathcal{D} & \end{array}$$

<sup>11</sup>To precisely see how, one needs to work with *extended* TFTs, a higher categorical refinement of what we are working with now. See [Mü20].

From the universal property of the groupoid completion, there is a further factorization of an invertible field theory:

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 \text{Bord}^{\text{II}} & \xrightarrow{\mathcal{Z}} & \mathcal{C}^{\otimes} \\
 \downarrow i & & \uparrow \\
 |\text{Bord}^{\text{II}}| & \xrightarrow{\tilde{\mathcal{Z}}} & \mathcal{C}^{\times}
 \end{array}$$

*Remark.* Note that the groupoid completion of the bordism category  $|\text{Bord}_{n,n-1}^{\text{II}}|$  is a Picard groupoid, see 5.1.25.

### 5.1.1 Invertible field theories and stable homotopy theory

These theories can be studied with stable homotopy theory, in the sense that they are maps of spectra.

Stable homotopy theory is the branch of homotopy theory that studies phenomena and structures that are stable, i.e. that can occur in any dimension, or in any sufficiently large dimension independently of the exact dimension. The tool used to reach higher dimensions is very often suspension<sup>12</sup>, this is why sometimes stable homotopy theory is characterized as the phenomena that are stable under suspension.

The investigation of stable phenomena is achieved via spectra, i.e. sequence of pointed spaces with maps relating them one another. For instance the stable homotopy group of the sphere are exactly the homotopy groups of the sphere spectrum. See in the appendix B for a fast paced modern introduction to spectra.

In what follows we sketch why invertible field theories are maps of spectra, this is however very handwavy, for a more detailed sketch, look in the appendix.

The key to realizing why invertible field theories are maps of spectra and thus computable via stable homotopy theory is the following theorem, due to May, which roughly says<sup>13</sup>

**Theorem 5.1.8** (Recognition theorem for connective spectra). *Connective spectra and Picard  $\infty$ -groupoids coincide, they are the same thing.*

Since stable homotopy theory involves  $\infty$ -categorical machinery, one must fully extend topological field theories (see 6.6), i.e. with  $(\infty, n)$ -categories of bordisms as a source. With the homotopy coherent additional structure of  $(\infty, n)$ -categories one gets that  $|\mathbf{Bord}|$  and  $\mathcal{C}^\times$  are  $\infty$ -groupoids since

1. we get  $|\mathbf{Bord}|$  by adjoining all inverses for all morphisms and thus all morphisms become invertible
2.  $\mathcal{C}^\times$  is obtained by forgetting about non-invertible morphisms (and objects) of  $\mathcal{C}$  and thus we are left only with invertible morphisms

However, we do not have just  $\infty$ -groupoids but also a symmetric monoidal structure with duals on both  $|\mathbf{Bord}|$  and  $\mathcal{C}^\times$ . In short, they are Picard  $\infty$ -groupoid. Thanks to 5.1.8 we know that they are connective spectra.

This is why  $\tilde{\mathcal{Z}}$  is not just a map of spaces but a map of spectra, and this enables the application of stable homotopy theory, making life easier. We can conclude this interlude on stable homotopy theory and invertible TFTs with the following motto

*Invertible TFTs are maps of connective spectra!*

The inquiring reader might rightly ask: why is this good news? The answer is that sadly we do not know much stuff about  $(\infty, n)$ -categories, e.g. we do not know well how co/limits work<sup>14</sup>, but in turn stable homotopy theory has been much more investigated and so we can understand them better than the usual extended TFT.

This is not only of pure mathematical interest but it also allows the application of topological field theories to condensed matter theory! Classical phases of matter are governed

<sup>12</sup>We define it in the appendix B.

<sup>13</sup>See B.0.16 for a precise statement.

<sup>14</sup>However, some people are fortunately working on this, see [MRR23].

by Landau theory of phase transition. However, the phases of a quantum material do not behave in the same manner. Fortunately, there are ways to describe them, or at least specific types of quantum matter (with gapped Hamiltonians for instance)<sup>15</sup>. The topological field theories describing the (topological) phases of matter of some condensed matter systems (with short range entanglement) are *invertible* field theories. The connection to stable homotopy theory allows to compute topological invariants of spectra and thereby of phases of matter. This was done by Freed and Hopkins in [FH21] and in [Fre14].

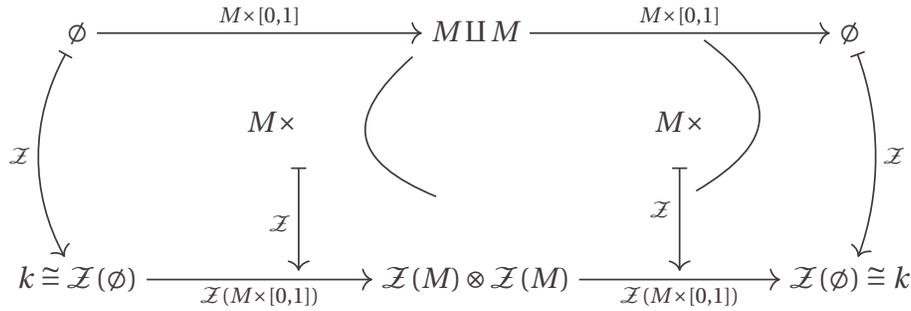
---

<sup>15</sup>Kitaev for instance proposed in [KLF09] that the topological insulators and superconductors of a certain type of condensed matter are classifiable via K-theory<sup>16</sup> and this was further refined via twisted equivariant K-theory by Dan Freed and Greg Moore in [FM13].

### 5.1.2 Dualizability in the context of topological field theories

Given  $\mathcal{Z} : \text{Bord}_{n,n-1} \rightarrow \text{Vect}$  and  $M \in \text{Bord}_{n,n-1}$ , one can prove that  $\mathcal{Z}(M)$  is a finite dimensional vector space. Specifically, we have that  $\dim \mathcal{Z}(M) = \mathcal{Z}(M \times S^1)(1)$ , where  $M \times S^1$  is an  $n$  dimensional cobordism from  $\emptyset$  to  $\emptyset$ .

*Proof.* Decompose  $M \times S^1$  into two semicircles  $M \times [0, 1]$ . Then it gets mapped by  $\mathcal{Z}$  to  $\text{Vect}_k$  in the following manner



We claim that the maps will roughly be  $k \rightarrow V^\vee \otimes V \xrightarrow{\text{evaluate}} k$ , where the first map sends  $1 \mapsto \sum_{i=1}^n f_i \otimes e_i$  where  $e_i$  is a basis of  $V$  and  $f_i$  is the dual basis.  $\square$

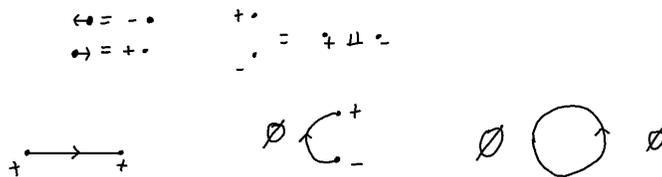
**Definition 5.1.9.** Let  $\text{Bord}_{n,n-1}^{\text{or}}$  be the category with:

- objects: closed and oriented  $(n - 1)$ -manifolds
- morphisms:  $\text{Hom}_{\text{Bord}_{n,n-1}^{\text{or}}}(M, N) =$  orientation preserving diffeomorphism classes of oriented bordisms. i.e. a bordism  $(\Sigma, p, \theta_0, \theta_1)$  where  $\Sigma$  has an orientation and the diffeomorphism  $\partial \Sigma \cong \overline{M} \amalg N$  is an orientation preserving one.

**Notation.** We denote with  $\bullet_+$  the positively oriented point, i.e. the closed 0-dimensional manifold from where there is an outgoing 1-dimensional bordism.

We denote with  $\bullet_-$  the negatively, i.e. the closed 0-dimensional manifold which is the incoming boundary of a 1-dimensional bordism.

**Example 5.1.10** (Some objects and morphisms from  $\text{Bord}_{1,0}^{\text{or}}$ ).



**Example 5.1.11** (Some objects and morphisms from  $\text{Bord}_{2,1}^{\text{or}}$ ).



Note that the orientation on the outgoing boundary is opposite to the induced orientation on the incoming one.

We can also define analogous categories for other tangential structures, e.g. a framing.

**Example 5.1.12.** In 1 and 2 dimensions...

**Definition 5.1.13.** Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a monoidal category. A left dual of an object  $X \in \mathcal{C}$  is an object  $Y$  together with  $ev_X : Y \otimes X \rightarrow \mathbb{1}_{\mathcal{C}}$  and  $coev_X : \mathbb{1}_{\mathcal{C}} \rightarrow X \otimes Y$  such that

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 \mathbb{1}_{\mathcal{C}} \otimes X \cong X & \xrightarrow{id_X} & X \otimes \mathbb{1}_{\mathcal{C}} \cong X \\
 \searrow^{coev_X \otimes id_X} & & \nearrow{id_X \otimes ev_X} \\
 & X \otimes Y \otimes X &
 \end{array} \tag{5.3}$$

and

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 Y \otimes \mathbb{1}_{\mathcal{C}} \cong Y & \xrightarrow{id_Y} & \mathbb{1}_{\mathcal{C}} \otimes Y \cong Y \\
 \searrow^{id_Y \otimes coev_Y} & & \nearrow{ev_Y \otimes id_Y} \\
 & Y \otimes X \otimes Y &
 \end{array} \tag{5.4}$$

The fact that these two diagrams commute is called snake relations. If the diagrams commute, then  $X$  is the right dual of  $Y$  and  $Y$  is the left dual of  $X$ .

*Remark.* If  $\mathcal{C}$  is braided, and in particular for us symmetric, any right dual is a left dual and viceversa.

**Notation.** We denote the dual of an object  $X$  with  $X^{\vee}$ . Sometimes it is also denoted with  $X^*$ .

**Corollary 5.1.14.** Let  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  be a monoidal functor. Thanks to monoidal functoriality, the monoidal unit  $\mathbb{1}_{\mathcal{C}}$  is sent to  $\mathbb{1}_{\mathcal{D}}$  (up to isomorphism), and hence one gets the evaluation map and coevaluation map:  $ev_{F(X)} : F(Y) \otimes F(X) \rightarrow \mathbb{1}_{\mathcal{D}} \cong F(\mathbb{1}_{\mathcal{C}})$  and  $coev_{F(X)} : F(\mathbb{1}_{\mathcal{C}}) \cong \mathbb{1}_{\mathcal{D}} \rightarrow F(X) \otimes F(Y)$ . Moreover, the image of a commuting diagram under a functor still commutes (see 4.2). So, the dual objects are sent to dual objects by monoidal functors and  $F(X^{\vee}) = F(X)^{\vee}$ .

**Example 5.1.15.**

1. Any finite dimensional vector space  $V$  has a dual, namely  $V^{\vee}$ :

$$ev_V : V^{\vee} \otimes V \rightarrow k \tag{5.5}$$

$$coev_V : k \rightarrow V \otimes V^{\vee} \tag{5.6}$$

2. As an exercise try  $\text{Set}, \times$
3.  $\mathcal{C} = \text{Bord}_{n,n-1}^{\text{or}}$ . The point  $\bullet_+$  is dualizable with dual  $\bullet_-$ .

This construction actually works for any object in  $\text{Bord}_{n,n-1}^{\text{or}}$  (and  $\text{Bord}_{n,n-1}$ ).

**Definition 5.1.16** (Dual Morphisms). Let  $X, Y$  be dualizable objects in a symmetric monoidal category  $\mathcal{C}$  and  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  be a morphism. The dual morphism is given by

$$f^{\vee} : Y^{\vee} \xrightarrow{id_{Y^{\vee}} \otimes coev_X} Y^{\vee} \otimes X \otimes X^{\vee} \xrightarrow{id_{Y^{\vee}} \otimes f \otimes id_{X^{\vee}}} Y^{\vee} \otimes Y \otimes X^{\vee} \xrightarrow{ev_Y \otimes id_{X^{\vee}}} X^{\vee}$$

**Definition 5.1.17** (Picard Groupoid). A Picard Groupoid is a symmetric monoidal category where every object is invertible with respect to  $\otimes$  (i.e.  $\forall A \in \mathcal{C}, \exists A^{-1}$  s.t  $A \otimes A^{-1} \cong \mathbb{1}_{\mathcal{C}}$ ) and every morphism is an isomorphism, and hence it is a groupoid.

**Lemma 5.1.18.** *In every bordism category  $\text{Bord}_{n,n-1}^{(\text{or})}$  every object is dualizable.*

**Lemma 5.1.19.** *Given symmetric monoidal categories  $\mathcal{C}$  and  $\mathcal{D}$ , symmetric monoidal functors  $F, G : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  and a symmetric monoidal natural transformation  $\alpha : F \Rightarrow G$ , if  $X \in \mathcal{C}$  is dualizable, then  $\alpha_X : F(X) \rightarrow G(X)$  is invertible.*

*Proof.* We claim that the inverse is given by  $\alpha_{(X^\vee)^\vee}$ . Following 5.1.16,  $\alpha_{(X^\vee)^\vee} : G(X^\vee)^\vee \rightarrow F(X^\vee)^\vee$ . Note that  $F(X^\vee) = F(X)^\vee$  and thus  $F(X^\vee)^\vee = F(X)^{\vee\vee} = F(X)$  and so  $\alpha_{(X^\vee)^\vee} : G(X) \rightarrow F(X)$ . Remember that  $ev_X : X^\vee \otimes X \rightarrow \mathbb{1}_{\mathcal{C}}$  and  $coev_X : \mathbb{1}_{\mathcal{C}} \rightarrow X \otimes X^\vee$ . We prove that the following diagram commutes

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 & G(X) \cong G(X) \otimes \mathbb{1}_{\mathcal{D}} & \\
 \begin{array}{c} \swarrow \\ id_{G(X)} \otimes G(coev_X) \end{array} & & \begin{array}{c} \searrow \\ id_{G(X)} \otimes F(coev_X) \end{array} \\
 G(X) \otimes G(X^\vee) \otimes G(X) & \xleftarrow{id_{G(X)} \otimes \alpha_{X^\vee} \otimes \alpha_X} & G(X) \otimes F(X^\vee) \otimes F(X) \\
 \downarrow G(ev_X) \otimes id_{G(X)} & & \downarrow id_{G(X)} \otimes \alpha_{X^\vee} \otimes id_{F(X)} \\
 & \xleftarrow{id_{G(X)} \otimes id_{G(X)} \otimes \alpha_X} & G(X) \otimes G(X^\vee) \otimes F(X) \\
 & & \downarrow G(ev_X) \otimes id_{F(X)} \\
 \mathbb{1}_{\mathcal{D}} \otimes G(X) \cong G(X) & \xleftarrow{\alpha_X} & \mathbb{1}_{\mathcal{D}} \otimes F(X) \cong F(X)
 \end{array}$$

First of all, the triangle on the top commutes, i.e.  $(id_{G(X)} \otimes \alpha_{X^\vee} \otimes \alpha_X) \circ (id_{G(X)} \otimes F(coev_X)) = id_{G(X)} \otimes G(coev_X)$ , because of the naturality of  $\alpha$ . The triangle underneath it also commutes, i.e.  $id_{G(X)} \otimes \alpha_{X^\vee} \otimes \alpha_X = (id_{G(X)} \otimes id_{G(X)} \otimes \alpha_X) \circ (id_{G(X)} \otimes \alpha_{X^\vee} \otimes id_{id_{F(X)}})$  because of the unitality of  $id_{G(X)}$  and  $id_{F(X)}$ . Lastly, the bottom trapezoid commutes thanks to the naturality of  $\alpha$  and thus the whole big diagram commutes. Consider now first mapping leftwards and successively downwards, i.e.  $(G(ev_X) \otimes id_{G(X)}) \circ id_{G(X)} \otimes G(coev_X)$ , this equals to the identity by one of the two snake relations of dual objects. Take now the other route of the outer diagram, on the right; note that  $(\alpha_X)^\vee = (G(ev_X) \otimes id_{F(X)}) \circ (id_{G(X)} \otimes \alpha_{X^\vee} \otimes id_{F(X)}) \circ id_{G(X)} \otimes F(coev_X)$  by definition (5.1.16) and hence the right route on the outer diagram corresponds to  $\alpha_X \circ (\alpha_X)^\vee$ . Since the outer diagram commutes we obtain that  $\alpha_X \circ (\alpha_X)^\vee = id_{G(X)}$ , i.e.  $(\alpha_X)^\vee$  is the right inverse of  $\alpha_X$ . One constructs a symmetric diagram by substituting  $F$ s with  $G$ s to prove that it is also the left inverse.  $\square$

**Corollary 5.1.20.** *If every object in a symmetric monoidal category  $\mathcal{C}$  is dualizable, then any symmetric monoidal natural transformation between symmetric monoidal functors that have  $\mathcal{C}$  as the source category is invertible since a natural transformation is invertible if and only if each of its components is invertible. Hence,  $\text{Fun}^\otimes(\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{D})$  is a groupoid for any  $\mathcal{D}$  when all objects in  $\mathcal{C}$  are dualizable.*

**Corollary 5.1.21.** *The category of topological field theories  $\text{TFT}_{n,n-1}^{\text{or}}(\mathcal{C})$  is a groupoid.*

**Lemma 5.1.22.** *Any invertible object is dualizable.*

*Proof.* Let  $X$  be an invertible object. Then, there must be an  $X^{-1}$  such that  $X \otimes X^{-1} \cong \mathbb{1}_{\mathcal{C}}$ , the invertible object is the dual of  $X$ . The co/evaluation maps become isomorphisms the snake relations hold because if a commutative triangle of isomorphisms commutes in one direction, then it commutes also in the opposite one, i.e. for arbitrary isomorphisms  $f, g, h$  such that  $f = h \circ g$ , it holds that  $f^{-1} = (h \circ g)^{-1} = g^{-1} \circ h^{-1}$ .  $\square$

**Lemma 5.1.23.** *A dualizable object is invertible if and only if its co/evaluation maps are isomorphisms.*

*Proof.*  $\implies$  directly follows from 5.1.22 since any invertible object has as co/evaluation maps isomorphisms. Conversely, suppose that  $X$  is a dualizable object and the co/evaluation maps are isomorphisms. Then, there is a  $Y \in \mathcal{C}$  such that  $ev_X : Y \otimes X \cong \mathbb{1}$ .  $\square$

**Corollary 5.1.24.** *If  $\mathcal{C}$  is a monoidal groupoid, then dualizable objects are invertible.*

*Proof.* Since  $\mathcal{C}$  is a groupoid, then also the co/evaluation maps are isomorphisms. From 5.1.23 it follows that the dualizable objects are invertible.  $\square$

**Corollary 5.1.25.** *A Picard groupoid (5.1.17) is equivalently a monoidal groupoid where every object is dualizable.*

**Example 5.1.26.** The underlying groupoid of  $\text{Bord}_{n,n-1}^{\text{or}}$  is a picard groupoid.

**Notation.** We denote with  $\mathcal{C}^{\cong}$  the underlying groupoid of  $\mathcal{C}$ , i.e. the subcategory of  $\mathcal{C}$  where we forget about non-invertible morphisms.

**Notation.** We denote with  $\mathcal{C}^{\text{fd}}$  (or sometimes  $\mathcal{C}^{\text{dualizable}}$ ) the subcategory of  $\mathcal{C}$  containing only dualizable objects. We chose 'fd' because it can stand for two things:

- 'finite dimensional' since dualizable objects in  $\text{Vect}$  are finite dimensional vector spaces and in general dualizability can be seen as a finiteness condition
- 'fully dualizable', a higher-categorical generalization of the notion of dualizability which we encounter in the next subsection

### 5.1.3 Dualizability in higher categories ✈

Equivalently, a left/right dual object  $X$  in a monoidal category  $\mathcal{C}$  can also be characterized as a left/right adjoint when considered as a 1-morphism in the delooping (see 4.8.31) bicategory (see 4.8.32)  $\mathbf{BC}$  of  $\mathcal{C}$ . This makes sense because:

- the evaluation map  $ev_X$  corresponds to the counit  $\epsilon$  of the adjunction
- the coevaluation map  $coev_X$  to the unit  $\eta$  of the adjunction
- the two diagrams (5.3 and 5.4) to the triangle identities of the adjunction.

A natural question is: what is an adjoint 1-morphism? We defined only adjoint functors (see 4.4.1)! Fortunately the definition we gave for functors, i.e. 1-morphisms in  $\mathbf{Cat}$ , is easily generalizable to 1-morphisms in an arbitrary bicategory, meaning that it is virtually the same: one just has to substitute '1-morphisms' for 'functors' and substitute '2-morphisms' for 'natural transformations' (when talking about the co/evaluation and the identity on the functors).

A sane individual, i.e. not a homo categoriens<sup>17</sup>, might ask why this is remotely useful. The answer is that one needs this intuition to talk about monoidal  $(\infty, n)$ -categories with duals. This is interesting for us because, for instance, these objects are used in the cobordism hypothesis, stating that their objects classify fully extended TFTs, see 6.6.

*Remark.* The notion of delooping of a monoidal category as a one-object bicategory can be generalized to monoidal  $(\infty, n)$ -categories. The delooping of a monoidal  $(\infty, n)$ -category  $\mathcal{C}$  is a one-object  $(\infty, n+1)$ -category  $\mathbf{BC}$  where the objects of  $\mathcal{C}$  are the 1-morphisms of  $\mathbf{BC}$  and the tensor product of  $\mathcal{C}$  is the composition  $\circ$  of 1-morphisms.

**Definition 5.1.27** ( $(\infty, n)$ -monoidal categories with duals). Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a monoidal  $(\infty, n)$ -category. Then  $\mathcal{C}$  has duals if and only if its delooping  $\mathbf{BC}$  has adjoints<sup>18</sup> for any  $k$ -morphism with  $0 < k < n+1$ . We say that any object in such a category is fully  $n$ -dualizable.

We have a vague idea of what are monoidal  $(\infty, n)$ -categories and deloopings thereof. However, we did not sketch what it means that an  $(\infty, n+1)$ -category has adjoints, but it is essential to understand this definition since we characterized the duals of a monoidal  $(\infty, n)$ -category in terms of the adjoints of its delooping. The idea is to trace this back to adjoints of 1-morphisms in bicategories.

**Definition 5.1.28** (Homotopy 2-category of an  $(\infty, n)$ -category). A homotopy 2-category of an  $(\infty, n)$ -category  $\mathcal{C}$  with  $n \geq 2$  is a bicategory  $h_2\mathcal{C}$  with

- the objects of  $\mathcal{C}$  as objects

$$\text{ob}(\mathcal{C}) = \text{ob}(h_2\mathcal{C})$$

- the 1-morphisms of  $\mathcal{C}$  as 1-morphisms

$$1\text{-mor}(\mathcal{C}) = 1\text{-mor}(h_2\mathcal{C})$$

<sup>17</sup>A subspecies of homo sapiens. Exemplars usually say stuff like 'I understand differential equations as sub- $\infty$ -groupoids of tangent and jet bundles' and have posters of Grothendieck or Lawvere in their bedroom.

<sup>18</sup>In the usual jargon, an  $(\infty, n)$ -category has adjoints if it has adjoints for any  $k$ -morphism with  $0 < k < n$ . We spelled what it means anyway for the sake of clarity.

- isomorphism classes of 2-morphisms in  $\mathcal{C}$  as 2-morphisms, i.e. given 1-morphisms  $f, g : X \rightarrow Y$  a 2-morphism in  $\mathbf{h}_2 \mathcal{C}$  is a 2-morphism in  $\mathcal{C}$  up to 3-isomorphism

$$2\text{-mor}(\mathcal{C}) / \cong = 2\text{-mor}(\mathbf{h}_2 \mathcal{C})$$

**Definition 5.1.29** (Adjoints in  $(\infty, n)$ -categories). We define adjoints for  $k$ -morphisms by recursion. An  $(\infty, n)$ -category  $\mathcal{C}$  has adjoints for 1-morphisms if its homotopy 2-category  $\mathbf{h}_2 \mathcal{C}$  has adjoints for 1-morphisms, i.e. if all 1-morphisms of  $\mathbf{h}_2 \mathcal{C}$  are part of an adjunction. An  $(\infty, n)$ -category  $\mathcal{C}$  has adjoints for  $k$ -morphisms if, for every pair  $X, Y \in \text{ob}(\mathcal{C})$ , the  $(\infty, n-1)$ -category  $\text{Hom}_{\mathcal{C}}(X, Y)$  has adjoints for  $k-1$ -morphisms.

We say that an  $(\infty, n)$ -category has adjoints if it has adjoints for any  $k$ -morphism with  $0 < k < n$ .

Having defined adjoints of morphisms of an  $(\infty, n)$ -category, we now have all the necessary pieces of the puzzle constituting the sketch of what it means that a monoidal  $(\infty, n)$ -category has duals.

*Remark.* There is an equivalent definition of monoidal  $(\infty, n)$ -category with duals, see [Lur09] and [GS18]. This intuition about adjoints is very useful also in this case.

# Chapter 6

## Classification of topological field theories

**Existence:** Why is there something, rather than nothing?

This does not seem very accessible by current methods. A more realistic goal may be

**Classification:** Given that there's something, what could it be?

---

Jack Morava in [Mor11]

In this chapter, we classify 1d-TFTs and 2d-TFTs, provide a sketch on how that might work for 3d-TFTs and show surprising connections between knot theory and 3d-TFTs.

Roughly, our classification theorems will be equivalence of categories of this kind

$$ev_{X \in \text{Bord}_n} : \text{Fun}^{\otimes}(\text{Bord}_n, \mathcal{C}) \simeq (\mathcal{C}^{\text{fd}})^{\cong}$$

meaning that evaluating a TFT on an object of  $\text{Bord}_n$  induces an equivalence of categories. To be clear, recall that:

- $\text{Bord}_n$  is the category of  $n$ -bordisms
- $\text{Fun}^{\otimes}(\text{Bord}_n, \mathcal{C})$  is the category of  $n$ -dimensional topological field theories since they are symmetric monoidal functors from the category of  $n$ -bordisms to some symmetric monoidal category
- $(\mathcal{C}^{\text{fd}})^{\cong}$  is the Picard groupoid underlying  $\mathcal{C}$  since  $\mathcal{C}^{\text{fd}}$  is the subcategory of  $\mathcal{C}$  containing only dualizable objects and  $(\mathcal{C}^{\text{fd}})^{\cong}$  is the maximal underlying groupoid, restricting dualizable objects in  $\mathcal{C}^{\text{fd}}$  to invertible ones

A natural question is: how is this a *classification*? This sort of statement certainly looks different from other classifications, for example the one of 2-dimensional manifolds we have seen in this course (3.2.1). Such an equivalence of categories classifies TFTs because every  $n$ -TFT is classified by the dualizable objects of its target category since to every TFT correspond a dualizable object (up to isomorphism). Another way of seeing this kind of theorems is that a TFT is determined by where it sends an object in  $\text{Bord}_n$ , without specifying how the functor acts on morphism, i.e. the bordisms. There is a further equivalent way to formulate such classification theorems for TFTs which can be seen as

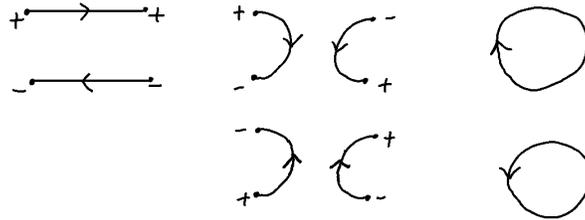
the generalization of something we have already seen:  $\Omega_0^{\text{or}}$  is the free abelian group on one generator, i.e.  $\mathbb{Z}$ . We later spell it out prove how this is equivalent to the equivalence of categories via  $ev_{X \in \text{Bord}_n}$ , see 6.6.1.

Sketchily, our strategy to prove these results will be to find generators and relations for  $\text{Bord}_n$  and then check where they are sent to. It will follow that dualizable objects in  $\mathcal{C}$  already provide all the information we need to know to determine what is the TFT in question: where the generators and relations of  $\text{Bord}_n$  are sent to.

## 6.1 Classification of 1d-TFTs

The main goal of this subsection is to prove that given an oriented 1d-TFT  $\mathcal{Z} : \text{Bord}_{1,0} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$ ,  $\mathcal{Z}(\bullet)$  has a dual and conversely, given an object  $X \in \mathcal{C}$  in the target category of the TFT we can reconstruct a 1d-TFT.

**Theorem 6.1.1** (Classification of 1-dimensional bordisms). *Any connected oriented 1-dimensional manifold with boundaries is diffeomorphic to one of the following manifolds:*



For the proof we refer to the appendix of [MW97].

This means that any 1-dimensional bordism (i.e. including disconnected ones) is diffeomorphic to a disjoint union of such bordisms. Since in  $\text{Bord}_{1,0}$  bordisms are taken up to orientation preserving diffeomorphisms, this means that in  $\text{Bord}_{1,0}$  all morphisms are tensor products of the listed manifolds. Moreover, we know that the objects of  $\text{Bord}_{1,0}$  are just disjoint unions of  $\bullet_+$  and  $\bullet_-$ . Hence, we now know the generators of  $\text{Bord}_{1,0}$ , i.e.  $\bullet_+$  and  $\bullet_-$ , and the relations, i.e. the possible connected 1-dimensional bordisms. Since we also know that  $\mathcal{Z}$  is a symmetric monoidal functor, it means that we shall just check where such generators and relations are sent, see 6.1.

*Remark.* By  $(\mathcal{C}^{\text{fd}})^{\cong}$  we denote the restriction of a symmetric monoidal category on its dualizable objects and its isomorphisms, said briefly: a restriction on the underlying Picard groupoid because in any symmetric monoidal groupoid an object is dualizable if and only if it is invertible (see 5.1.25).

**Theorem 6.1.2.** *Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a symmetric monoidal category. Then the map<sup>1</sup>*

$$\text{TFT}_{1,0}^{\text{or}} = \text{Fun}^{\otimes}(\text{Bord}_{1,0}^{\text{or}}, \mathcal{C}) \xrightarrow{\mathcal{E}v_{\bullet_+}} (\mathcal{C}^{\text{fd}})^{\cong} \tag{6.1}$$

$$\mathcal{Z} \mapsto \mathcal{Z}(\bullet_+) \tag{6.2}$$

<sup>1</sup>There is unfortunately a notational clash between what we called the evaluation map for dualizable objects, denoted by  $ev$ , and what we also call in this case evaluation map, denoted by  $\mathcal{E}V$ . In the latter case, we are referring to a similar convention we use for example in topology when we call a map of this genre  $\text{Map}(*, X) \rightarrow X$  an evaluation map. The intuition is that we feed an element of the domain into a map, a functor in our case, and see what happens, "evaluate it".

is a symmetric monoidal equivalence of groupoids.

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 \text{TFT}_{1,0}^{\text{or}} & \xrightarrow{\mathcal{E}v_{\bullet,+}} & \mathcal{C} \\
 \downarrow \cong & \searrow & \uparrow j \\
 & & \mathcal{C}^{\text{fd}} \\
 & \nearrow i & \\
 (\mathcal{C}^{\text{fd}})^{\cong} & & 
 \end{array}$$

The image of  $\mathcal{E}v_{\bullet,+}$  is in  $(\mathcal{C}^{\text{fd}})^{\cong}$ , since

1.  $\text{TFT}_{1,0}^{\text{or}}$  is a groupoid, and functors preserve isomorphisms
2. Every object in  $\text{Bord}_{1,0}^{\text{or}}$  is dualizable and, because of functoriality, the image of a dualizable object remains a dualizable object.

This categorical equivalence means that

**Theorem 6.1.3** (Alternative formulation of the classification of 1TFTs). *Let  $X \in \mathcal{C}$  be a dualizable object. Specifying  $\mathcal{Z}(\bullet_+) = X$  determines a 1d-TFT.*

Firstly, we prove this alternative formulation, later we show that one can infer that the evaluation on a point is an equivalence. In a section at the end of the chapter we show another way to neatly relate a proof of a further alternative formulation of the classification of 1TFTs, see 6.6.1.

Note some important characteristics of symmetric monoidal functors in general.

**Lemma 6.1.4.** *Given a symmetric monoidal functor  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  it holds that*

1. *identity morphisms are sent to identity morphisms because of functoriality, for any  $X \in \mathcal{C}$  holds that  $F(id_X) = id_{F(X)}$*
2. *dual objects are sent to dual objects because the functor preserves the tensor product and composition of morphisms; take for instance a look at the image of one of the triangle identities*

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 \mathbb{1}_{\mathcal{D}} \otimes F(X) \cong F(X) & \xrightarrow{id_{F(X)}} & F(X) \otimes \mathbb{1}_{\mathcal{D}} \cong F(X) \\
 \searrow & & \nearrow \\
 & F(X) \otimes F(Y) \otimes F(X) & \\
 \swarrow & & \searrow \\
 F(\text{coev}_X) \otimes id_{F(X)} & & id_{F(X)} \otimes F(\text{ev}_X)
 \end{array}$$

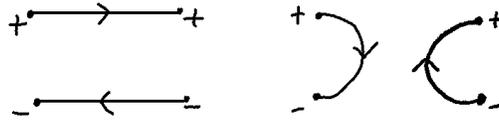
this must commute because of the functoriality of  $F$ :  $F(id_X) = F((\text{coev}_X \otimes id_X) \circ (id_X \otimes \text{ev}_X))$  and thus  $id_{F(X)} = F(\text{coev}_X \otimes id_X) \circ (id_{F(X)} \otimes F(\text{ev}_X))$ ; thereby the coevaluation maps in  $\mathcal{C}$ ,  $\text{ev}_X$  and  $\text{coev}_X$ , are sent to coevaluation maps in  $\mathcal{D}$ ,  $\text{ev}_{F(X)}$  and  $\text{coev}_{F(X)}$

3. *the components of the braiding of  $\mathcal{C}$  are sent to components of the braiding in  $\mathcal{D}$  since the following diagram composed of isomorphisms commutes for any  $X, Y \in \mathcal{C}$*

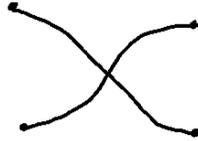
$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 F(X) \otimes F(Y) & \xrightarrow{\beta_{F(X),F(Y)}} & F(Y) \otimes F(X) \\
 \psi_{X,Y} \downarrow & & \downarrow \psi_{Y,X} \\
 F(X \otimes Y) & \xrightarrow{F(\beta_{X,Y})} & F(Y \otimes X)
 \end{array}$$

Note that also the following lemma is true

**Lemma 6.1.5.** *All 1-dimensional bordisms are generated by the generators:*



and the relation



*Proof.* We need to show that there is a way of gluing our generators and the braiding relation to get the other 4 manifolds of 6.1.1.

- 1.
- 2.
- 3.
- 4.

□

*Proof of the classification of 1-TFTs.* The moral of the latter lemma is that identity morphisms of  $\bullet_+$  and  $\bullet_-$ , coevaluation and evaluation maps  $coev_{\bullet_+}$  and  $ev_{\bullet_-}$ , and the braiding are enough to generate all the 1-dimensional bordisms. Thus, to determine what a TFT does, we need to only determine what it does on these morphisms, i.e. 1-dimensional bordisms. In the previous lemma on some properties of symmetric monoidal functors, we proved that identity morphisms are sent to identity morphisms, the co/evaluation maps are sent to co/evaluation maps and components of the braiding are sent to components of the braiding. Moreover, in that lemma we also proved that dual objects are sent to dual objects and  $\bullet_+$  is a dual object, so for an arbitrary symmetric monoidal category  $\mathcal{C}$ , a 1-TFT sends it to a dual object. From a dual object  $X$  one can infer the co/evaluation maps and its dual. The braiding of a symmetric monoidal category is already given. So we can conclude that a one dimensional TFT is fully determined by where  $\bullet_+$  is sent to. □

This proof mainly relies on abstract nonsense. So we now provide an alternative proof.

*Proof.* Also this proof relies on the fact that since the functor is *symmetric* monoidal one can just check what the TFT does only for 5 of all the possible connected 1-dimensional bordisms (6.1.1), not considering what happens for the other 3 ones with the reversed orientations without loss of generality because  $\text{Bord}_{1,0}$  is symmetric monoidal.

First we need to determine where  $\bullet_+, \bullet_- \in \text{Bord}_{1,0}$  are sent. Since they are duals of one another, they are dualizable objects and thus they are sent to  $X, X^\vee \in \mathcal{C}^{\text{fd}}$ , e.g. finite dimensional vector spaces in the case of  $\text{Vect}_k$ . An arbitrary objects of  $M \in \text{Bord}_{1,0}$  is a finite disjoint union of  $\bullet_+, \bullet_-$ , i.e.

$$M = (\amalg_I \bullet_+) \amalg (\amalg_J \bullet_-)$$

where  $I, J \subseteq \mathbb{N}$ . Thanks to the symmetric monoidal functoriality of  $\mathcal{Z}$  we have that

$$\mathcal{Z}(M) = \left( \bigotimes_I X \right) \otimes \left( \bigotimes_J X^\vee \right)$$

Now we need to understand where the 5 possible 1-bordisms are sent.

1.  $\mathcal{Z}(\text{f} \xrightarrow{\quad} \text{f}) = id_X$
2.  $\mathcal{Z}(\text{f} \xleftarrow{\quad} \text{f}) = id_{X^\vee}$
3.  $\mathcal{Z}(\text{f} \begin{array}{c} \curvearrowright \\ \text{---} \end{array}) = ev_X$ , hence  $X^\vee \otimes X \xrightarrow{ev_X} \mathbb{1}_e$  and more precisely for  $v \in X \in \text{Vect}_k$ :  $ev_X : (X, \lambda) \mapsto \lambda(v)$
4.  $\mathcal{Z}(\text{f} \begin{array}{c} \curvearrowleft \\ \text{---} \end{array}) = coev_X$ , hence  $\mathbb{1}_e \xrightarrow{coev_X} X \otimes X^\vee$  and more precisely for  $\lambda \in k \in \text{Vect}_k$ , via the canonical isomorphism  $X \otimes X^\vee \cong \text{End}(X)$ ,  $coev_X$  corresponds to taking the trace
5.  $\mathcal{Z}(\text{f} \begin{array}{c} \circlearrowright \\ \text{---} \end{array}) = coev_X \circ ev_X$ , hence  $\mathbb{1}_e \xrightarrow{coev_X \circ ev_X} \mathbb{1}_e$ , and, following the cases for  $\text{Vect}_k$  treated in the previous two points, to taking the trace of the identity matrix, i.e. the dimension of  $X$

The moral of the story is that a TFT is uniquely determined, up to isomorphism, once one knows  $X \in \mathcal{C}^{\text{fd}}$  since then one knows

- what  $X^\vee$  is, what finite sequences of tensored  $X$  and  $X^\vee$  are, which will be sent to finite disjoint unions of  $\bullet_+$  and  $\bullet_-$  (aka all the objects of  $\text{Bord}_{1,0}$ );
- what  $id_X$  and  $id_{X^\vee}$  are
- what  $ev_X$  and  $coev_X$  are and hence also  $coev_X \circ ev_X$

□

*Remark.* This proof considers 5 possible bordisms and not all 8, thereby excluding some possible orientations. However, Lurie's argument is without loss of generality because it implicitly relies on the *symmetric* monoidality of  $\text{Bord}_{1,0}$  since, for instance, one can get

$\text{f} \begin{array}{c} \curvearrowleft \\ \text{---} \end{array}$  by composing  $\text{f} \begin{array}{c} \curvearrowright \\ \text{---} \end{array}$  with a braiding.

We stated that these two proofs by generators and relations prove the equivalence of categories in the classification of 1-TFTs. However, it might seem mysterious why this is the case. We now prove that the evaluation on a point is actually an equivalence of categories, a fully faithful essentially surjective functor by the fundamental theorem of category theory 4.3.3.

Alternatively, one can check out in a later section why one can neatly (i.e. from abstract nonsense) conclude that  $\mathcal{E}V_{\bullet,+}$  from the other previous two proofs 6.6.1.

*Proof.* This is from [Fre13, Theorem 16.10].

We need to prove three things to demonstrate that  $\mathcal{E}V_{\bullet,+}$  is an equivalence: that it is full, faithful and essentially surjective:

1. Trivially, note that since  $\mathcal{E}V_{\bullet,+}$  lands in  $(\mathcal{C}^{\text{fd}})^{\cong}$  for any  $A \in \mathcal{C}^{\text{fd}})^{\cong}$  one can define a TFT such that  $\mathcal{Z}(\bullet_+) = A$
2. It is faithful: let  $\mathcal{Z}, \mathcal{Z}' \in \text{TFT}_{1,0}^{\text{or}}$  and  $\alpha, \beta : \mathcal{Z} \Rightarrow \mathcal{Z}'$  be natural transformations between them and hence isomorphisms (see 5.1.21). Suppose that  $\mathcal{E}V_{\bullet,+}(\alpha) = \mathcal{E}V(\beta)$ , i.e.  $\alpha_{\bullet_+}^1 = \alpha_{\bullet_+}^2$  since  $\mathcal{E}V_{\bullet,+}$  evaluates on the point. Recall that  $\bullet_- = \bullet_+^{\vee}$ . We have that for any natural isomorphism  $\eta$  it holds that  $\eta_{\bullet_+}^{\vee} = (\eta_{\bullet_+})^{\vee}$  because of functoriality and  $\eta_{\bullet_-} = (\eta_{\bullet_+}^{\vee})^{-1}$  because of 5.1.19. From this it follows that  $\alpha_{\bullet_-} = (\alpha_{\bullet_+}^{\vee})^{-1} = (\beta_{\bullet_+}^{\vee})^{-1} = \beta_{\bullet_-}$ . With a specular proof we can prove that  $\alpha_{\bullet_+} = \beta_{\bullet_+}$ . Since 0-dimensional compact manifolds are just finite disjoint unions of  $\bullet_+$  or  $\bullet_-$  and  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  are symmetric monoidal natural transformations it follows that for any  $X \in \text{Bord}_{1,0}^{\text{or}}$ ,  $\alpha_X = \beta_X$ . This proves that  $\mathcal{E}V$  is faithful because it implies that for any two natural transformations that are mapped to equal morphisms in  $\mathcal{C}$  must be also equal in  $\text{Fun}^{\otimes}(\text{Bord}_{1,0}, \mathcal{C})$
3.  $\mathcal{E}V_{\bullet,+}$  is full. Given an arbitrary isomorphism  $f : X \rightarrow X'$  in  $(\mathcal{C}^{\text{fd}})^{\cong}$  we now show that there is an isomorphism  $\eta : \mathcal{Z} \Rightarrow \mathcal{Z}'$  in  $\text{Fun}^{\otimes}(\text{Bord}_{1,0}, \mathcal{C})$  such that  $\mathcal{E}V_{\bullet,+}(\eta) = \eta_{\bullet_+} = f$ . So, we define  $f = \eta$  and thus  $(f^{\vee})^{-1}$ . Objects in  $(\mathcal{C}^{\text{fd}})^{\cong}$  are sequences of tensor products of  $X$  and  $X^{\vee}$ . Hence, using the trick we used before we can extend any natural transformation  $\eta : \bullet_+ \rightarrow \bullet_+$  to a disjoint union of such natural transformations, via the monoidal structure on  $\text{Bord}_{1,0}$ , since any object  $X \in \text{Bord}_{1,0}$  is diffeomorphic to a finite disjoint union of  $\bullet_+$  and  $\bullet_-$ , and we know that  $(\alpha_{\bullet_+}^{\vee})^{-1}$ . This is independent of the choice of the diffeomorphism between  $X$  and disjoint unions of  $\bullet_+$  and  $\bullet_-$  thanks to the coherence of the chosen map  $\eta_X$ . Moreover, the diffeomorphism is determined up to permutation also because of the coherence of  $\eta_X$ . It remains to show that  $\eta_X$  is an isomorphism.  $\eta_X$  can be a disjoint union of the 5 1-bordisms (6.1.1) and hence, thanks to symmetric monoidality of  $\eta$ , we can just check these 5. The two identities are trivially isomorphisms. Then we need to check that the following diagram commutes to check for the coevaluation

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 \mathcal{Z}(\bullet_-) \otimes \mathcal{Z}(\bullet_+) & \xrightarrow{f \circ (f^{\vee})^{-1}} & \mathcal{Z}'(\bullet_-) \otimes \mathcal{Z}'(\bullet_+) \\
 \swarrow \mathcal{Z}(\text{coev}_X) & & \searrow \mathcal{Z}'(\text{coev}_X) \\
 & \mathbb{1}_{\mathcal{C}} & 
 \end{array}$$

The commutativity of this diagram follows from the fact that the following diagram

commutes

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 \mathbb{1}_{\mathcal{C}} & \xrightarrow{\mathcal{Z}(\text{coev}_X)} & \mathcal{Z}(\bullet_-) \otimes \mathcal{Z}(\bullet_+) \\
 \downarrow \mathcal{Z}'(\text{coev}_X) & & \downarrow id_{\mathcal{Z}(\bullet_-)} \otimes f \\
 \mathcal{Z}'(\bullet_-) \otimes \mathcal{Z}'(\bullet_+) & \xrightarrow{id_{\mathcal{Z}(\bullet_-)} \otimes id_{\mathcal{Z}(\bullet_+)} \otimes \mathcal{Z}(\text{coev}_X)} & \mathcal{Z}(\bullet_-) \otimes \mathcal{Z}'(\bullet_+) \\
 \downarrow \mathcal{Z}(\text{coev}_X) \otimes id_{\mathcal{Z}'(\bullet_-)} \otimes id_{\mathcal{Z}'(\bullet_+)} & & \downarrow id_{\mathcal{Z}(\bullet_-)} \otimes \mathcal{Z}'(\text{coev}_X) \otimes id_{\mathcal{Z}(\bullet_+)} \\
 \mathcal{Z}(\bullet_-) \otimes \mathcal{Z}(\bullet_+) \otimes \mathcal{Z}'(\bullet_-) \otimes \mathcal{Z}'(\bullet_+) & \xrightarrow{id_{\mathcal{Z}(\bullet_-)} \otimes f \otimes id_{\mathcal{Z}'(\bullet_-)} \otimes id_{\mathcal{Z}'(\bullet_+)}} & \mathcal{Z}(\bullet_-) \otimes \mathcal{Z}'(\bullet_+) \otimes \mathcal{Z}'(\bullet_-) \otimes \mathcal{Z}'(\bullet_+)
 \end{array}$$

The argument for the evaluation of  $X$  is specular. From there also the map for the circle follows since the circle is just a composition of evaluation and a coevaluation with a braiding in between. Note that the commutativity of the circle means that  $\mathcal{Z}(S^1) = \mathcal{Z}'(S^1)$ .  $\square$

The classification of 1-dimensional topological field theories is the simplest case of an important guiding hypothesis in the field of TFTs, the cobordism hypothesis, see 6.6. It is the only case in which so-called extended TFTs coincide with non-extended ones, i.e. the usual Atiyah-Segal definition as a simple symmetric monoidal functor we are using.

Now we classified 1 dimensional TFTs, we would now like to do the same for 2 dimensional TFTs. We will find out that there is an equivalence between  $\text{TFT}_{2,1}^{or}(\mathcal{C})$  and commutative Frobenius algebra objects in  $\mathcal{C}$ .

## 6.2 Classification of 2d-TFTs

As we have done for the 1-dimensional case, we now try to classify 2-dimensional TFTs. For a more detailed proof see Kock [Koc03] or the lecture notes from Schweigert [Sch23].

We have already defined the following notions in arbitrary monoidal categories (see 4.7.6, 4.7.2, 4.7.4, 4.8.9, 4.8.8). However, we now explicitly state how the abstract formal definitions are instantiated in  $\text{Vect}_k$ .

**Definition 6.2.1** (Algebra over a Field). An algebra<sup>2</sup> over a field  $k$  is a monoid object (4.7.2) in  $\text{Vect}_k$ . More generally a left/right  $R$ -algebra is a monoid object in the category of left/right  $R$ -modules. The latter generalization holds also for the next definitions of  $k$ -coalgebra,  $k$ -bialgebra and Frobenius  $k$ -algebra.

**Definition 6.2.2** (Coalgebra over a Field). A  $k$ -coalgebra is a comonoid object in  $\text{Vect}_k$ .

**Definition 6.2.3** (Bialgebra over a Field). A  $k$ -bialgebra is a bimonoid object (see 4.7.5) in  $\text{Vect}_k$ . More explicitly, it is simultaneously an  $k$ -algebra and a  $k$ -coalgebra, a monoid and a comonoid object in  $\text{Vect}_k$ . A  $k$ -bialgebra is commutative in  $\text{Vect}_k$ , if the underlying monoid is commutative, or viceversa, if the underlying comonoid is commutative.

**Definition 6.2.4** (Frobenius  $k$ -Algebra). A Frobenius  $k$ -algebra is a Frobenius algebra (see 4.7.6) in a  $\text{Vect}_k$ . It is commutative if it is also a commutative  $k$ -algebra (and therefore a cocommutative coalgebra).

<sup>2</sup>Note that for us algebras are **always** associative and unital.

These definitions are perfectly fine, if we disregard pedagogical considerations. However, they might still seem mysterious to someone not used to this abstract nonsense. For this reason, we now give three more concrete definitions of a Frobenius algebra. They are all equivalent.

**Reminder.** A pairing  $K : W \otimes V \rightarrow k$  is non-degenerate if it is part of a data exhibiting  $W$  as the dual of  $V$ , i.e.  $\exists \gamma : k \rightarrow V \otimes W$  such that ...

If  $V, W$  finite dimensional, this is equivalent to saying that

$$K^\# : V \rightarrow W^\vee := \text{Hom}_k(W, k), \quad v \mapsto K(- \otimes v) \tag{6.3}$$

$$K_\# : W \rightarrow V^\vee := \text{Hom}_k(V, k), \quad w \mapsto K(w \otimes -) \tag{6.4}$$

are isomorphisms.

**Exercise 6.2.5.** What's the analogous reformulation of " $X \in \mathcal{C}$  is dualizable"?

**Definition 6.2.6.** A  $k$ -algebra is a monoid object in  $\text{Vect}_k$ . More explicitly, it is a  $k$ -vector space  $A$  together with linear maps:

$$\mu : A \otimes A \rightarrow A \tag{6.5}$$

$$\eta : k \rightarrow A \tag{6.6}$$

which satisfy associativity and (right and left) unitality by making the following two diagrams commute

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} (A \otimes A) \otimes A & \xrightarrow{\alpha_{A,A,A}} & A \otimes (A \otimes A) & \xrightarrow{id_A \otimes \mu} & A \otimes A \\ \mu \otimes id_A \downarrow & & & & \downarrow \mu \\ A \otimes A & \xrightarrow{\mu} & & & A \end{array}$$
  

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} \mathbb{1}_{\mathbb{C}} \otimes A & \xrightarrow{\eta \otimes id_A} & A \otimes A & \xleftarrow{id_A \otimes \eta} & M \otimes \mathbb{1}_{\mathbb{C}} \\ & \searrow \lambda_A & \downarrow \mu & \swarrow \rho_A & \\ & & M & & \end{array}$$

A homomorphism  $\phi : A \rightarrow B$  of  $k$  algebras is a linear map that preserves/commutes with  $(\mu_A, \eta_A)$  and  $(\mu_B, \eta_B)$ , a monoid homomorphism.

**Definition 6.2.7.** A coalgebra is a comonoid object in  $\text{Vect}_k$ . More explicitly, one simply takes

$$\Delta : A \rightarrow A \otimes A$$

$$\epsilon : A \rightarrow k$$

and reverses the arrows in the diagrams.

A homomorphisms of  $k$ -coalgebras accordingly preserve  $(\Delta_A, \epsilon_A)$  and  $(\Delta_B, \epsilon_B)$ . It is a monoid homomorphism in  $\text{Vect}_k^{op}$ .

**Example 6.2.8.** Take the vector space  $A = k[x]/x^2 = k \oplus kx$  and take the map  $A \rightarrow A \otimes A$  which sends  $x \mapsto 1 \otimes x + x \otimes 1$  and  $1 \mapsto 1 \otimes 1$  and the map  $\epsilon : A \rightarrow k$  which sends 1 to 1 and  $x$  to 0.

**Definition 6.2.9** (First definition). A ( $k$ -) Frobenius algebra is a (finite dimensional)  $k$  algebra  $(A, \mu, \nu)$  together with an associative (=invariant) non-degenerate pairing  $k : A \otimes A \rightarrow k$ , i.e.

$$K(ab, c) = K(a, bc) \tag{6.7}$$

The fact that the pairing is invariant actually tells us something about the algebra structure, not only the vector space structure.

**Example 6.2.10.**  $A = \text{Mat}_{n \times n}(k)$  with matrix multiplication, in which the pairing  $K$  is simply the composition of multiplication and taking the trace, i.e.  $K = \text{tr} \circ \mu$ .

*Proof.* Need to show nondegeneracy. Pick a basis of  $\text{Mat}_{n \times n}(k)$  given by  $\{E_{ij}\}$  with 1 in the  $j$ th row and  $i$ th column. We then have the dual basis  $\{E_{ji}\}$  and we have an isomorphism of  $A$  and  $A^\vee$  given by  $E_{ij} \mapsto E_{ji}$ . Then we can compute:  $K$  is exactly the evaluation.  $\square$

Note that in the proof we used an isomorphism of  $A$  and  $A^\vee$  to get the nondegenerate invariant pairing. This leads to the following alternative definition:

**Definition 6.2.11** (Second definition). A  $(\Phi-)$  Frobenius algebra is a (finite dimensional) algebra  $A$  with a left  $A$ -module isomorphism  $\Phi : A \rightarrow A^\vee$ .

The left  $A$ -module part again gives us the compatibility with the algebra structure.

*Remark.* For the definition to make sense  $A$  and  $A^\vee$  should be left  $A$ -modules:

- $M = A$  is an  $A$  module via  $A \otimes M \rightarrow M$  which sends  $(a, m) \mapsto \mu(a, m)$ .
- $M = A^\vee$  is an  $A$  module via  $A \otimes M \rightarrow M = A^\vee = \text{Hom}(A, k)$  which sends  $(a, \phi) \mapsto \phi(\mu(a, -))$ .

Then a left  $A$ -module map should satisfy  $\Phi(a \cdot m) = a \cdot \Phi(m)$ .

**Example 6.2.12.** Let's check that the map  $\Phi$  in the previous example was actually a left  $A$ -module isomorphism. We would like

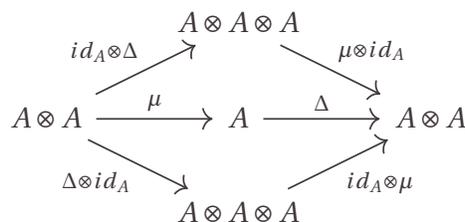
$$\Phi(A \cdot E_{ij}) = A \cdot \Phi(E_{ij}) \tag{6.8}$$

which is true when explicitly calculating both sides.

**Definition 6.2.13** (Third definition). A  $(\Delta, \epsilon)$ - Frobenius algebra is a finite dimensional algebra  $(A, \mu, \nu)$  together with a coalgebra structure  $(A, \Delta, \epsilon)$  such that the *Frobenius relation*

$$(\mathbb{1}_c \otimes \mu) \circ (\Delta \otimes \mathbb{1}_c) = \Delta \circ \mu = (\mu \otimes \mathbb{1}_c) \circ (\mathbb{1}_c \text{ itimes } \Delta)$$

holds. This means that the following diagram commutes



Note that the the only way in which we exploited the fact that we are working with vector spaces is that we had the tensor product and the unit with respect to this product. In other words, we only used the fact that  $\mathbf{Vect}$  is a symmetric monoidal category, so the definitions work in any symmetric monoidal category<sup>3</sup>. This is important to keep in mind because the target category of our 2d-TFTs might not be  $\mathbf{Vect}_k$ .

**Proposition 6.2.14.** *The three definitions of Frobenius algebra are equivalent.*

*Proof.* (1)  $\iff$  (2) is an exercise.

(3)  $\implies$  (1): we set  $K = \epsilon \circ \mu : A \otimes A \rightarrow k$  and  $\gamma = \Delta \circ \eta$ , however these are not duality data that show that  $K$  is a nondegenerate pairing.

We can then define  $\Phi := (id_{A^\vee} \otimes K) \circ (coev_A \otimes id_A)$  which is an isomorphism with inverse  $id_A \otimes ev_A \circ (\gamma \otimes id_{A^\vee})$ . Then using in addition this isomorphism one can prove that  $K$  is a nondegenerate pairing.

(1)  $\implies$  (3) we can define  $\Delta := \mu \circ (\gamma \otimes id_A)$  and  $\epsilon := K \circ (id \otimes \mu)$ .  $\square$

**Reminder.**  $\mathbf{TFT}_{2,1}^{or}(\mathcal{C})$  is a groupoid (see 5.1.21).

**Theorem 6.2.15** (Classification of 2 dimensional TFTs). *The functor*

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{TFT}_{2,1}^{or}(\mathcal{C}) &\rightarrow \mathbf{cFrob}_{\mathcal{C}} \\ \mathcal{Z} &\mapsto \mathcal{Z}(S^1) \end{aligned}$$

*is an equivalence of groupoids*<sup>4</sup>.

The category  $\mathbf{cFrob}_{\mathcal{C}}$  has as objects commutative Frobenius algebras on an arbitrary symmetric monoidal category  $\mathcal{C}$ , i.e. Frobenius algebras that are also commutative bi-monoid objects (4.8.8), as morphisms it has Frobenius homomorphisms, i.e. morphisms of monoids that are also morphisms of comonoids and preserve all the structure of a Frobenius algebra. One could have also proven a statement with  $\mathbf{Vect}_k$  as the target category and proven that  $\mathbf{TFT}_{2,1}^{or}(\mathbf{Vect}_k) \simeq \mathbf{cFrob}_k$ . Note that the category of commutative Frobenius algebras in an arbitrary symmetric monoidal category is indeed a groupoid:

**Theorem 6.2.16.** *The category of Frobenius algebras on an arbitrary symmetric monoidal category  $\mathcal{C}$  is a groupoid.*

*Proof.* Let  $(A, \epsilon, \eta, \Delta, \mu), (A', \epsilon', \eta', \Delta', \mu') \in \mathbf{cFrob}_{\mathcal{C}}$  and  $\phi : A \rightarrow A'$  be a Frobenius homomorphism. Then ...  $\square$

Take a look at [Koc03] for a proof for Frobenius  $k$ -algebras, i.e. Frobenius algebras in  $\mathbf{Vect}_k$ .

*Proof.* (1) We need to prove that  $\mathcal{Z}(S^1) =: A$  is a commutative Frobenius algebra. We get the product from the pair of pants and the coproduct from the copants. The unit and counit maps are simply given by the cup and cocup. Showing that this is actually a Frobenius algebra now just amounts to drawing the commutative diagram for a Frobenius algebra in the category of bordisms, i.e. all maps are simply bordisms.

(2) We now want see that it's a functor. Let  $\mathcal{Z}, \mathcal{Z}'$  be two TFTs and  $\alpha : \mathcal{Z} \implies \mathcal{Z}'$  be a natural transformation.

<sup>3</sup>Take a detour in the subsection on monoidal categories (4.6), and more specifically take a look at 4.7.6, if you want to see a definition for general monoidal categories.

<sup>4</sup>We soon prove that also the category of Frobenius algebras is a groupoid.

**Claim.**  $f = \alpha(S) : A = \mathcal{Z}(S^1) \rightarrow \mathcal{Z}'(S^1) = B$  is a homomorphism of commutative Frobenius algebras.

We just use naturality of  $\alpha$  several times. □

For functoriality we did not check that compositions of morphisms (natural transformations) are sent to compositions (of morphisms in cFrob).

Now, we want to prove the converse direction: given a commutative Frobenius algebra  $A$ , construct an oriented 2d-TFT such that  $\mathcal{Z}(S^1) = A$ . We want to define a TFT  $\mathcal{Z}$ . On objects we simply set  $\mathcal{Z}(S^1, or_+) \mapsto A$  and  $\mathcal{Z}(S^1, or_-) \mapsto A^\vee$ . This is enough because objects in  $\text{Bord}_{2,1}^{or}$  are closed 1 dimensional manifolds and therefore diffeomorphic to a disjoint union of  $S^1$ s. Therefore, if  $Y$  is a connected one dimensional manifold we have an orientation preserving diffeomorphism  $Y \rightarrow S^1$ , but in which sense is this unique?

**Definition 6.2.17** (Diffeomorphism Group). Let  $X \in \text{SmoothMfld}$ .  $\text{Diff}(X)$  denotes the automorphism group of  $X$ , i.e. the group of diffeomorphisms  $X \xrightarrow{\phi} X$ .

Note that the diffeomorphism group can be considered a topological group (see 4.7.8) if we use an apt topology, for example one can consider  $\text{Diff}(X)$  a subspace of  $(C^\infty(X, X), \text{Whitney})$ , where *Whitney* denotes the Whitney  $C^\infty$  topology, and endow it with the subspace topology.

*Remark.* An isotopy (see 4.8.17 for the definition) is equivalently a path in  $\text{Diff}(X)$ .

**Fact.** *Rotations,  $SO(2) \hookrightarrow \text{Diff}^{or}(S^1)$  and this is a retraction.*

Thus, up to "wiggling", the map  $Y \rightarrow S^1$  is unique.  
Upshot: for an oriented 1 manifold  $Y$  we define

$$\mathcal{Z}(Y) := A^{\#\pi_0(Y)} \tag{6.9}$$

and diffeos are sent to identities.

Now what do we do on morphisms? Just send everything to what we expect from the algebra and coalgebra structure! i.e. pants to multiplication, copants to comultiplication, cylinder to identity, cup to algebra unit, cocup to counit. Now, a morphism in the bordism category is a diffeomorphism class of oriented 2d bordisms and by the classification theorem we found that a 2d connected oriented manifold with boundary is diffeomorphic to a composition. A bordism then specifies where "in" and "outgoing" boundaries are. Since  $\mathcal{Z}$  must be functorial, given a composite as in the drawing, we must define  $\mathcal{Z}$  to be

$$\mathcal{Z}(\Delta) \dots$$

Question: is this well defined?

Going back to proof of classification, the local moves we had translate precisely to conditions of a Frobenius algebra. Subtlety: the following are not isomorphic as bordisms, while they are diffeomorphic as manifolds with boundary.

We then need to specify what that bordism is sent to:

$$\mathcal{Z}(\cdot) : A \otimes A \xrightarrow{\text{swap}} A \otimes A \tag{6.10}$$

So the classification of (possibly disconnected) 2d bordisms is simply a manifold with boundary as given from the classification of manifolds with boundary, composed with a permutation bordism, i.e. a bordism such as the following.

Now, since  $\mathcal{Z}$  is functorial we simply set

$$\mathcal{Z}(\dots) \tag{6.11}$$

and for well definedness consider the following drawing:

but we see that this is true because the Frobenius algebra is commutative.

**Lemma 6.2.18.** *Every (possibly non connected) 2 cobordism is a composition of*

1. a "permutation bordism". i.e. given a permutation  $\sigma \in S_n$ , then we get a bordism  $S^1 \sqcup^n \rightarrow (S^1)^{\sqcup n}$  in which the two sides have the same orientation up to interchanging components. The bordism is simply  $(S^1)^{\sqcup n}$  in which on the right we use the permutation.
2. a disjoint union of connected 2 bordisms
3. another permutation bordism.

**Proposition 6.2.19.**  $\text{Bord}_{2,1}^{or}$  is the symmetric monoidal category with duals generated by (under composition and disjoint union):

- one object,  $S^1$ .
- morphisms the ones we've already mentioned: cup, pants, cocup, copants, swap (and cylinder but that's just the identity).

with the following relations:

- the cylinder is the identity, so composed with all the other bordisms it gives back the same bordism
- sewing in disks
- (co)associativity
- (co)commutativity
- Frobenius relations

In other words,  $\text{Bord}_{2,1}^{or}$  is free symmetric monoidal category with duals on one commutative Frobenius object  $S^1$ .

### Usual depictions of orientations

Let's now do a recap of what we've done up to now. We proved

$$\text{TFT}_{2,1}^{or}(\mathbb{C}) \xrightarrow[\text{Ev}]{\cong} \text{cFrob}(\mathbb{C}) \simeq \tag{6.12}$$

and the steps were the following:

- the functor is well defined: on objects we get  $\text{Ev}(\mathcal{Z}) = \mathcal{Z}(S^1)$  which is a commutative Frobenius algebra. On morphisms we get an isomorphism of commutative Frobenius algebras.
- $\text{Ev}$  is essentially surjective, actually we proved surjective.
- $\text{Ev}$  is fully faithful

*Remark.* Last time we forgot about orientations...

### 6.3 Variants of TFTs

We now provide an outlook to some research programs that are tightly connected to TFTs.

- we could have used different tangential structures, such as
  - unoriented bordisms. In this case we would need an isomorphism  $A \cong A^\vee$  which should be an isomorphism of commutative Frobenius algebras.
  - framing: not many framed closed 2 manifolds
  - spin structure
  - conformal structure and thereby we would have studied *conformal* field theories
- open-closed TFTs (Lauda-Pfeiffer, [LP08]): the idea is to enlarge the bordism category to include *compact* 1d manifolds (not necessarily closed) and we then also have additional morphisms.

Now, what structure does the line segment have? It's still a Frobenius algebra! But it is not necessarily commutative.

There is a more general result on the classification of such field theories by Kevin Costello [Cos06].

- extended TFTs ([Fre94],[BD95],[Lur09],[CS19]): one can extend TFTs downward, e.g. in 2-dimensional TFTs one might want to include the possibility of "composing" the line segment object with itself to get  $S^1$ . We would therefore modify the notion of symmetric monoidal category to be able to compose objects in  $\text{Bord}_{2,1,0}$ . Thereby one gets a finer structure than a usual category, a.k.a. a 1-category: objects, morphisms between objects and morphism between morphisms. The last ones are usually called 2-morphisms and the morphisms between objects are then called 1-morphisms. Objects, 1-morphisms and 2-morphisms are in this case 0 manifolds, 1-dimensional bordisms and 2 dimensional bordisms with corners. We then no longer have the structure of a category, but rather that of a weak 2-category, or bicategory. See 4.5.3 for the definition of strict categories of any finite dimension, 4.8.32 for the definition of a bicategory, and 6.6 for a more detailed outlook on extended TFTs.
- cohomological TFTs ([Wit91]): aka families of  $(n - 1)$  manifolds and families of  $n$  bordisms. In practice, fix a space  $X$ , then objects are  $M$  closed  $(n - 1)$  manifolds together with  $M \rightarrow X$  and morphisms are bordisms  $\Sigma$  together with  $\Sigma \rightarrow X$ .

Often we take  $X = BG$  the classifying space of a group  $G$  and having maps  $M \rightarrow BG$  and  $\Sigma \rightarrow BG$  gives us principle bundles on  $M$  and  $\Sigma$ . This is connected to the field of *gauge theory* and is sometimes called *cohomological TFT*.

- ✈ arithmetic field theories ([Maz73],[Kim16],[KW07], [Kap95],[Dav23]): although still very conjectural, some envision poetic connections between number theory and physics via TFTs. The original intuition behind this connection is a mysterious analogy of Barry Mazur stating that number fields form correspond to some kind of 3-dimensional manifolds and primes in such number fields behave like knots embedded in these 3-dimensional manifolds. How this connects to TFTs will become clearer after the next section, where we will have gone through the connection between the

Jones polynomial (a knot invariant) and 3d-Chern-Simons theory. For instance, the spectrum<sup>5</sup> of the commutative ring of the integers  $\mathbb{Z}$  can be seen (roughly speaking<sup>6</sup>) as a 3-dimensional manifold<sup>7</sup>, and since the spectra prime fields can be canonically embedded in the spectra of the integers, they are analogous to knots since knots can be defined as embeddings of  $S^1$  into some 3-dimensional manifold<sup>8</sup>. Mazur came up with this analogy in [Maz73], see this mathoverflow comment by Lieven Lebruyn and the nLab entry on  $\text{Spec}(\mathbb{Z})$  for accessible introductions to this specific correspondence. Some ([Kim16], Clark Barwick's SHIFTED project and this talk of his on his efforts towards geometric foundations for arithmetic field theories) are trying to define arithmetic quantum field theories in order to apply ideas of TFTs to number theory, for example to arithmetic curves<sup>9</sup>, i.e. the spectra of rings of integers in algebraic number fields. While others ([Wit91],[Dav23]) more specifically, see a strong connection with the Langlands program. This view is summarized by the motto *the Langlands program is part of the study of 4-dimensional (arithmetic, topological) quantum field theory*. For a more accessible introduction to this research program, check out these notes [DBZ21] by Jackson Van Dyke of a course on this topic by David Ben-Zvi.

✈ algebraic quantum field theory ([HK64]): talking about endomorphism monoids, i.e. monoids of the form  $(\text{Hom}_{\mathcal{C}}(X, X), \circ)$  (see 4.1.5) we previously mentioned operator algebras, i.e. monoids and submonoids of the form  $(\text{Hom}_{\text{TopVect}_k}(X, X), \circ)$ . They are an object of interest in themselves but importantly for us algebraic quantum field theory makes extensive use of operator algebras. Algebraic quantum field theory is very roughly a way of translating the Heisenberg picture of quantum mechanics (sometimes called matrix mechanics) to quantum field theory by providing an attempt to axiomatize QFT in a mathematically rigorous way. Given some apt operators on an apt topological vector space, meaning that the topological vector space can represent a quantum state and the selected operators on it can represent observables, an AQFT provides a formal assignment of algebras of such operators to regions of spacetime according to some axioms, e.g. the Haag Kastler Axioms. In this way, it pins down how observables depend of spacetime while states are being fixed, as in the Heisenberg picture. Algebraic quantum field theory can be roughly considered to be a dual to topological quantum field theory since TFTs invert the direction by assigning geometric data to algebraic ones. In fact, topological quantum field theory can be seen as a way of translating the Schrödinger picture (also called wave mechanics) to quantum field theory: states are represented by objects in the target monoidal category, the functor from Bord captures the local time evolution, and thereby a TFT shows how states are propagated through time while the observables are held fixed, as in the Schrödinger picture (see more on this

<sup>5</sup>Not in the sense of a modern abelian group, which we previously described 5.1.1! This is the spectrum of a ring.

<sup>6</sup>To make this more precise Mazur talks about exotic stuff like étale cohomological dimension.

<sup>7</sup>This analogy has been very recently made precise by Peter Scholze via the framework of analytic stacks, which is defined via the language of condensed mathematics. He talked about this in this talk <https://archive.mpm-bonn.mpg.de/id/eprint/4956/>.

<sup>8</sup>Often it is sufficient to pick  $\mathbb{R}^3$  as the manifold we embed in and it is what we will do in the next section. However, taking arbitrary 3 manifolds does also make sense and in some cases, like this one, it is what one desires.

<sup>9</sup>Something from arithmetic geometry, see [Liu02]

at this section of the nLab entry on TFTs). In quantum mechanics, the Heisenberg and the Schrödinger picture are two faces of the same medal, i.e. matrix mechanics and wave mechanics are equivalent<sup>10</sup>; however, we are far from proving that AQFT and TQFT are also two faces of the same medal. One point of contact between the two is via factorization algebras (something related to  $E_n$ -algebras, see 4.8.1 for the definition of a  $E_1$ -algebra), see 4.8.30 for a definition of factorization algebra and [CG23] for a summary on factorization algebras and how they relate to TQFT and AQFT.

In conclusion, algebraic quantum field theory is not a variant of topological field theory, but an alternative attempt to put quantum field theory on mathematically rigorous footings. One can discover more on algebraic quantum field theory in [HM06] and [FR19].

✈ supersymmetric field theory: supersymmetric field theories are field theories defined as a functor similarly to TFTs but instead of having usual manifolds in the source, they have objects called super manifolds. Stefan Stolz and Peter Teichner conjectured a deep relation between elliptic cohomology and such quantum field theories (see [TS04])

## 6.4 3d TFTs

From now on the main reference will be [KRT97].

For classifying TFTs in 1 and 2 dimensions the procedure we have been following is to find an algebraic category which is equivalent with such TFTs evaluated on some object. In particular, in order to classify 1d TFTs (with target category  $\text{Vect}_k$ ) we established an equivalence via the evaluation functor of on a point, which turns out to be a finite dimensional vector spaces; while for 2d TFTs the evaluation is done on the circle  $S^1$  giving us commutative Frobenius  $k$ -algebras.

These equivalences of categories allow us to reconstruct 1d and 2d TFTs (up to some reasonable form of equivalence) from this purely algebraic data. One can ask themselves if a classification of this kind is possible also for higher dimension, such as 3d TFTs.

First, 3d-TFTs can be constructed from algebraic data, although a bit more sophisticated than what we got in lower dimensions, we will find out that every *modular tensor category* gives a 3d TFT<sup>11</sup>.

<sup>10</sup>Interestingly from a historical point of view, Schrödinger's (and Eckhart's) famous proof from 1926 that the two approaches are equivalent is faulty, but von Neumann fortunately provided a foolproof demonstration in 1932. See [Mul97] for more on this interesting trivia.

<sup>11</sup>So-called once-extended 3d TFTs, i.e. TFTs of the sort  $\text{Bord}_{3,2,1} \xrightarrow{\mathcal{Z}} \mathcal{C}$ , can be classified by modular tensor categories. As we previously sketched, once-extended 2d TFTs have  $\text{Bord}_{2,1,0}$  as source and  $\text{Bord}_{2,1,0}$  is a symmetric monoidal bicategory (see 4.8.40 and 6.6). Also  $\text{Bord}_{3,2,1}$  is a symmetric monoidal bicategory with disjoint unions of  $S^1$  as objects. In short, there is an equivalence between once-extended 3d-TFTs evaluated on the circle  $S^1$  and modular tensor categories (see [Jor21] for more). This is a very difficult result, the details of which are not fully available yet, despite being expected/"known" for a decade

This results can be summarized diagrammatically as follows

$$\begin{aligned} \text{FinVect} \ni X &\overset{\text{uniquely determines}}{\rightsquigarrow} \mathcal{Z} \in \text{1-TFT} \\ \text{CommFrob} \ni A &\overset{\text{uniquely determines}}{\rightsquigarrow} \mathcal{Z} \in \text{2-TFT} \\ \text{ModTensor} \ni \mathcal{C} &\overset{\text{uniquely determines}}{\rightsquigarrow} \mathcal{Z} \in \text{3-TFT} \end{aligned}$$

Here ModTensor is the category of *modular tensor categories*, which we will not fully define; rather, we give some ingredients below but you can think of them as some sort of categorified commutative Frobenius algebra.

The main objective of this section is to sketch how this assignment could work and what is the relation between the 3d TFT evaluated at a particular example of a modular tensor category (which is related to 3d Chern-Simons field theory) and the Jones polynomial- a knot invariant.

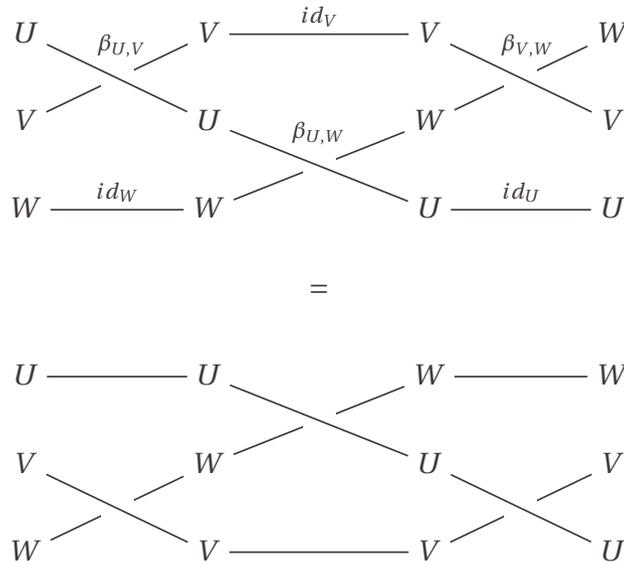
We begin with a somewhat strange thing:

### 6.4.1 The Yang-Baxter equation

**Theorem 6.4.1.** *Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a braided strict<sup>12</sup> monoidal category. Then, for  $U, V, W \in \mathcal{C}$  we have*

$$(\beta_{V,W} \otimes id_U) \circ (id_V \otimes \beta_{U,W}) \circ (\beta_{U,V} \otimes id_W) = (id_W \otimes \beta_{U,V}) \circ (\beta_{U,W} \otimes id_V) \circ (id_U \otimes \beta_{V,W})$$

which we can visualize draw with the following “string diagram”:



where a horizontal line is the identity and a crossing is the braiding  $\beta$ . In the drawing we simply "moved the middle string from above to below" and this is called a Reidemeister III move in knot theory.

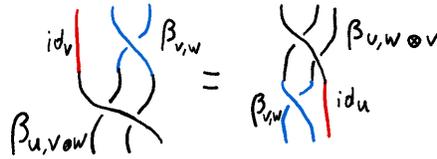
<sup>12</sup>A braided strict monoidal category is a strict monoidal category, i.e. a monoidal category where associators and unitors are strict equalities instead of natural isomorphisms, with a braiding, i.e. a natural isomorphism  $- \otimes - \cong - \otimes -$  swap. Note that  $\text{Vect}_k$  is not an example of strict monoidal category, while a monoid or a group thought of as categories are indeed strict. See the section on monoidal categories for more (4.6).

Note: we are used to symmetric monoidal categories and thus categories where which morphism “goes over” another is not relevant. For a braided monoidal category this is -in general- NOT the case, so in the diagrams above which morphism goes above and what below is important information.

*Proof.* Recall that  $\beta$  is a *natural* isomorphism, so for  $U \xrightarrow{id} U, V \otimes W \xrightarrow{\beta_{V,W}} W \otimes V$  we apply the naturality of  $\beta_{U,-}$  and get the following diagram:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} U \otimes (V \otimes W) & \xrightarrow{\beta_{U,V \otimes W}} & (V \otimes W) \otimes U \\ id_U \otimes \beta_{V,W} \downarrow & & \downarrow \beta_{V,W} \otimes id_U \\ U \otimes (W \otimes V) & \xrightarrow{\beta_{U,W \otimes V}} & (W \otimes V) \otimes U \end{array}$$

We may visualize the commutativity also via string diagrams:



we get exactly two specular drawings! However, algebraically, the proof is not finished. Coming from compatibility diagrams of a braided monoidal category, we have

$$(id_Y \otimes \beta_{X,Z}) \circ (\beta_{X,Y} \otimes id_Z) = \beta_{X,Y \otimes Z} \tag{6.13}$$

which inserted for  $\beta_{U,V \otimes W}$  and  $\beta_{W \otimes V,U}$  gives the result. □

Now, what happens if we take  $U = V = W$ ? Let  $\beta := \beta_{V,V}$ , we now get

$$(\beta \otimes id) \circ (id \otimes \beta) \circ (\beta \otimes id) = (id \otimes \beta) \circ (\beta \otimes id) \circ (id \otimes \beta) \tag{6.14}$$

which is reminiscent of the Yang-Baxter equation (YBE):

**Definition 6.4.2** (Yang-Baxter Equation and  $R$ -matrix). Let  $V$  be a vector space,  $c \in \text{Aut}(V \otimes V)$ . The YBE for  $c$  is

$$(c \otimes id) \circ (id \otimes c) \circ (c \otimes id) = (id \otimes c) \circ (c \otimes id) \circ (id \otimes c) \tag{6.15}$$

A solution to the YBE is called  $R$ -matrix. In coordinates, for  $v_i$  a basis of  $V$ , if

$$c(v_i \otimes v_j) = \sum_{k,l} c_{ij}^{kl} v_k \otimes v_l \tag{6.16}$$

then the YBE is given by

$$\sum_{p,q,y} c_{ij}^{pq} c_{qk}^{yn} c_{py}^{ln} = \sum_{y,q,r} c_{jk}^{qr} c_{iq}^{ly} c_{yr}^{mn} \tag{6.17}$$

Theorem 6.4.1 then tells us that, for *any*  $V \in \text{Vect}$ ,  $\beta_{V,V}$  is an  $R$ -matrix!

**Example 6.4.3.** the automorphism on  $V \in \text{Vect}$ :  $V \otimes V \xrightarrow{swap} V \otimes V$  satisfies the YBE because

- it comes from a standard braiding  $\beta$  in  $\text{Vect}$

- Coxeter relation in  $S_3$ :

$$(12)(23)(12) = (23)(12)(23)$$

Consider then  $V$  finite dimensional vector space with basis  $e_1, \dots, e_n$  and  $q$  an invertible scalar. Now define  $c_q(e_i \otimes e_j) := qe_i \otimes e_j$  for  $i = j$ ,  $e_j \otimes e_i$  for  $i < j$  and  $e_j \otimes e_i + (q - q')e_i \otimes e_j$  for  $i > j$ . A computation then shows that this satisfies the YBE. Note that  $c_1 = \text{swap}$  is a 1-parameter "deformation" of swap.

But now, this all YBE business comes from representation theory!

**Definition 6.4.4.** Let  $G$  be a group, a representation of  $G$  on  $V$  a vector space (or  $R$  module) is a group homomorphism  $\rho : G \rightarrow \text{Aut}(V)$ , i.e.

$$\rho(gh) = \rho(g)\rho(h), \quad \forall g, h \in G \tag{6.18}$$

And a morphism between representations  $\rho_i : G \rightarrow \text{Aut}(V_i), i = 1, 2$  is a linear map  $\alpha : V_1 \rightarrow V_2$  such that the following diagram commutes:

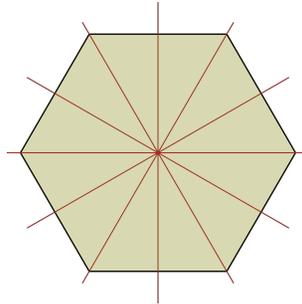
$$\begin{array}{ccc} V_1 & \xrightarrow{\alpha} & V_2 \\ \rho_1(g) \downarrow & & \downarrow \rho_2(g) \\ V_1 & \xrightarrow{\alpha} & V_2 \end{array} \tag{6.19}$$

This gives rise to the category of representations of  $G$ ,  $\text{Rep}_G$ .

*Remark.* The diagram 6.19 looks suspiciously like a natural transformation, and it is! In particular it's exactly example 1 in 4.2.2. In other words, the category of representations is the functor category:

$$\text{Rep}(G) = \text{Fun}(\mathbf{BG}, \text{Vect}) \tag{6.20}$$

**Example 6.4.5.** Symmetries of a polygon:  $G = D_n$  dihedral group and  $\rho : D_n \rightarrow \text{Aut}(\mathbb{R}^2)$ , where  $D_n \curvearrowright \mathbb{R}^2$  via reflections and rotations. For example the reflections can be represented visually for the hexagon as follows



Solutions of YBE give representations of the braid group, which we explore in the next section.

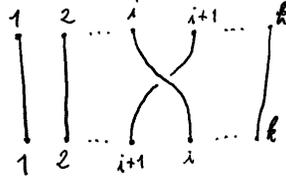
### 6.4.2 The braid group and the Braid category

**Definition 6.4.6** (Braid groups). Let  $k \geq 3$ . The braid group  $B_k$  with  $k$  strands has  $k - 1$  generators  $\sigma_1, \dots, \sigma_{k-1}$  and 2 relations:

$$\begin{aligned} 1. \sigma_i \sigma_j &= \sigma_j \sigma_i && \text{if } |i - j| > 1 \\ 2. \sigma_i \sigma_{i+1} \sigma_i &= \sigma_{i+1} \sigma_i \sigma_{i+1} && \text{if } 1 \leq i < k - 1 \end{aligned} \tag{6.21}$$

In addition  $B_2$  is the free group on one generator  $\sigma$ , i.e. it is isomorphic to  $\mathbb{Z}$ . For even lower generators  $B_1 = B_0 = e$ .

The reason we call  $B_k$  the braid group with  $k$  strands is that we can picture the elements  $\sigma_i$  in the following way:



which resembles a braid.

*Remark.* There is a surjective homomorphism to the symmetric group

$$\begin{aligned} B_k &\rightarrow S_k \\ \sigma_k &\mapsto s_k \end{aligned} \tag{6.22}$$

which is clear since  $S_k$  has the same generators and relations with in addition  $s_i^2 = e$ .

**Proposition 6.4.7.** *Let  $c \in \text{Aut}(V \otimes V)$  be an R-matrix (i.e. a solution of the YBE). Then, for any  $k > 0$ , there is a unique homomorphism  $\rho_k^c : B_k \rightarrow \text{Aut}(V^{\otimes k})$  (i.e. a representation of  $B_k$  on  $V^{\otimes k}$ ) such that*

$$\rho_k^c(\sigma_i) := c_i, \quad i = 1, \dots, k-1 \tag{6.23}$$

with the  $c_i \in \text{Aut}(V^{\otimes k})$  is defined as: take  $c$  in position  $i, i+1$  and  $id$  otherwise, i.e.

$$c_i := \begin{cases} c \otimes id_{V^{\otimes(k-2)}}, & i = 1 \\ id_{V^{\otimes(i-1)}} \otimes c \otimes id_{V^{\otimes(k-i-1)}}, & 1 < i < k-1 \\ id_{V^{\otimes(k-2)}} \otimes c, & i = k-1 \end{cases} \tag{6.24}$$

(the second expression alone is enough is we forget about the identity when we have  $id_{V^{\otimes 0}}$ )

*Remark.* With this notation, YBE reads as

$$c_1 c_2 c_1 = c_2 c_1 c_2 \tag{6.25}$$

since the extra identities have no relevant effect. Equivalently then the YBE can also be written as

$$c_i c_{i+1} c_i = c_{i+1} c_i c_{i+1} \tag{6.26}$$

*Proof.* Define  $\rho_k^c(\sigma_i) := c_i$  and check that the  $c_i$  satisfy the relations in Definition 6.4.6.

For 1. we would like

$$c_j c_i = c_i c_j \tag{6.27}$$

for  $i > j + 1$ . This follows from the fact that  $c_i$  and  $c_j$  don't "interact":

$$\begin{aligned} &(id_{V^{\otimes(j-1)}} \otimes c \otimes id_{V^{\otimes(k-j-1)}})(id_{V^{\otimes(i-1)}} \otimes c \otimes id_{V^{\otimes(k-i-1)}}) \\ &= (id_{V^{\otimes(j-1)}} \otimes c \otimes id_{V^{\otimes(i-j-2)}} \otimes id_{V^{\otimes 2}} \otimes id_{V^{\otimes(k-i-1)}})(id_{V^{\otimes(i-1)}} \otimes c \otimes id_{V^{\otimes(k-i-1)}}) \\ &= (id_{V^{\otimes(j-1)}} \otimes c \otimes id_{V^{\otimes(i-j-2)}} \otimes c \otimes id_{V^{\otimes(k-i-1)}}) \\ &= (id_{V^{\otimes(i-1)}} \otimes c \otimes id_{V^{\otimes(k-i-1)}})(id_{V^{\otimes(j-1)}} \otimes c \otimes id_{V^{\otimes(k-j-1)}}) \end{aligned}$$

2. simply follows from the remark above. □

Now we would like to know a geometrical interpretation of the braid group: for this we need to talk about the configuration space.

**Definition 6.4.8** (Unordered configuration space). Let  $\text{uConf}_k(\mathbb{R}^2) \subset (\mathbb{R}^2)^k$  be the subspace of  $k$ -tuples  $(x_1, \dots, x_k)$  such that  $x_i \neq x_j$  for  $i \neq j$ , this space is called the *ordered* configuration space. Then we have an action  $S_k \curvearrowright \text{uConf}_k(\mathbb{R}^2)$ . The *unordered* configuration space is  $\text{Conf}_k(\mathbb{R}^2) := \text{uConf}_k(\mathbb{R}^2)/S_k$ .

You should think of  $\text{uConf}_k(\mathbb{R}^2)$  as the collection of all possible (ordered, meaning that we give a number to each point)  $k$  distinct points on the plane.  $\text{Conf}_k(\mathbb{R}^2)$  is the same but now we forget about the numbering.

We would like to talk about the fundamental group of  $\text{Conf}_k(\mathbb{R}^2)$  (the why will become clear in a moment), but for that we need to pick a basepoint. Let us indicate coordinates by working in  $\mathbb{C}$  rather than in  $\mathbb{R}^2$ . Then let  $p = [(1, 2, \dots, k)] \in \mathbb{C}^k$ , that is to say that all points are placed on the  $x$ -axis in steps of 1 (and the square brackets are to indicate the class under the quotient by  $S_k$ ). We then have a homomorphism  $B_k \rightarrow \pi_1(\text{Conf}_k(\mathbb{R}^2), p)$  which sends  $\sigma_i \mapsto \hat{\sigma}_i = [f_i]$  where  $f_i$  is a loop at  $p$ , defined in  $(\mathbb{R}^2)^k$  by:

$$f^i = (f_1^i, \dots, f_k^i) : [0, 1] \rightarrow (\mathbb{R}^2)^k \cong \mathbb{C}^k \quad (6.28)$$

$$f_j^i(s) = j, \quad \text{if } j \neq i, i+1 \quad (6.29)$$

$$f_i^i(s) = \frac{1}{2}(2i+1 - e^{\pi i s}) \quad (6.30)$$

$$f_{i+1}^i(s) = \frac{1}{2}(2i+1 - e^{\pi i s}) \quad (6.31)$$

this indeed induces a loop in  $\text{Conf}_k(\mathbb{R}^2)$ .

For it to be a homomorphism we need to check that the images of  $\sigma_i$  satisfy the relations 6.21 of the  $B_k$  group.

1.  $\hat{\sigma}_i \hat{\sigma}_j = \hat{\sigma}_j \hat{\sigma}_i$  for  $|i - j| > 1$
2.  $\hat{\sigma}_i \hat{\sigma}_{i+1} \hat{\sigma}_i = \hat{\sigma}_{i+1} \hat{\sigma}_i \hat{\sigma}_{i+1}$  for  $1 \leq i < k - 1$

For 1. one finds the same result as in the proof of Proposition 6.4.7 above, i.e. for  $|i - j| > 1$ ,  $\hat{\sigma}_i$  and  $\hat{\sigma}_j$  don't "interact" with one another. Instead 2. can be checked visually.

The following important result can be found in [ART50].

**Theorem 6.4.9.** *This homomorphism  $\phi : B_k \rightarrow \pi_1(\text{Conf}_k(\mathbb{R}^2), p)$  is an isomorphism.*

The drawings above may give us the idea to construct a category in which morphisms are given by the paths  $f$  which are morphisms between sets  $k$  points. This will be the Braid category. More in detail, given a representative  $f = (f_1, \dots, f_k) : [0, 1] \rightarrow (\mathbb{R}^2)^k$  of an element in  $\pi_1(\text{Conf}_k(\mathbb{R}^2), p)$  we can define the following subset of  $[0, 1] \times \mathbb{R}^2$ :

$$L_f = \bigcup_{j=1}^k \{(s, f_j(s)) : s \in [0, 1]\} \quad (6.32)$$

which is pretty much what we were drawing above, the graph of the path considered. It is therefore simply the union of disjoint line segments. Note now that

1.  $\partial L_f = \{0, 1\} \times \{1, 2, \dots, k\}$  since the path starts and ends at  $p = [(1, 2, \dots, k)]$ .
2.  $\forall s \in [0, 1]$  we have that  $L_f \cap (\{s\} \times \mathbb{R}^2) = k$  points.
3.  $L_f$  is a bordism from  $\{1, \dots, k\}$  to itself. Where in addition we can add an orientation by "flowing" from 0 to 1.
4. group structure gives the composition of bordisms.
5. always have just  $\bullet_1, \dots, \bullet_k$  as source/target  $\implies$  can take just this object.
6. bordism  $L_f$  comes with an embedding into  $[0, 1] \times \mathbb{R}^2$ . This really depends on the representative! But the bordism itself only depends on  $[f] \in \pi_1(\text{Conf}_k(\mathbb{R}^2))$ .

This allows us to define the following category:

**Definition 6.4.10.** The Braid category is given by:

- objects: natural numbers  $0, 1, \dots, k, \dots$ , which we think of as sets of  $k$  points,
- morphisms:

$$\text{Hom}_{\text{Braid}}(k, l) = \begin{cases} \emptyset & \text{if } k \neq l \\ \text{isotopy classes of "braids" from } k \text{ to } k & \text{if } k = l \end{cases} \quad (6.33)$$

By braids we mean a "permutation 1 bordism together with an embedding"  $\cup_{\{1, \dots, k\}} [0, 1] \hookrightarrow [0, 1] \times \mathbb{R}^2$  such that 1. and 2. hold.

- composition is "stacking the pictures", i.e. composition of bordisms plus stacking embeddings (using  $[0, 1] \cup_{1=0} [0, 1] \cong [0, 1]$ ).
- braided monoidal structure given pictorially by stacking  $\mathbb{R}^2$ s next to each other, in the sense that  $k \otimes l = k + l$  in which the additional  $l$  points are simply stacked next to the initial  $k$  points.

**Exercise 6.4.11.** One could now prove that  $\text{Braid} \simeq \coprod_{k \geq 0} B_k$ , where  $\coprod_{k \geq 0} B_k$  was in one of the exercise sheets.

### 6.4.3 Expanding the Braid category: the Tangle category

Next step: allow more morphisms, namely all bordisms, together with suitable embeddings.

**Definition 6.4.12.** A tangle with  $k$  inputs and  $l$  outputs is a 1 dimensional bordism  $\Sigma$  from  $k$  to  $l$  points together with  $\Sigma \hookrightarrow [0, 1] \times \mathbb{R}^2$  smooth embedding, such that

$$\partial_{in}\Sigma = \{(0, 1), (0, 2), \dots, (0, k)\} \quad (6.34)$$

$$\partial_{out}\Sigma = \{(1, 1), (1, 2), \dots, (1, l)\} \quad (6.35)$$

We can now define the tangle category, of which Braid will be a (braided monoidal) subcategory.

**Definition 6.4.13.** The tangle category  $\text{Tang}_1$  has:

- objects: natural numbers
- morphisms:

$$\mathrm{Hom}_{\mathrm{Tang}_1}(k, l) = \{\text{isotopy classes of tangles from } k \text{ to } l \text{ points}\} \quad (6.36)$$

- composition of underlying bordisms and stacking embeddings
- braided monoidal structure as before

Note that we also have  $\mathrm{Braid} \subset \mathrm{Tang}_1$ .

**Definition 6.4.14.** Let  $(\mathcal{C}, \otimes)$  be a monoidal category and  $X \in \mathcal{C}$ . We say that  $Y$  is a right dual of  $X$  if there is

$$ev_X : Y \otimes X \rightarrow 1 \quad (6.37)$$

$$coev_X : 1 \rightarrow X \otimes Y \quad (6.38)$$

such that the snake relations are satisfied. We then say that  $X$  is a left dual of  $Y$ . See 5.1.13 for a complete definition.

**Lemma 6.4.15.** *In  $\mathrm{Tang}$ , every object has a left and a right dual.*

*Proof.* Same pictures as for  $\mathrm{Bord}_1$ . □

We can now define the concept of a framing on a tangle, which is different from what we previously meant as framing.

**Definition 6.4.16.** A framing on a tangle is a nonvanishing normal vector field on the tangle such that at the in-boundary and at the out-boundary it "points up".

This definition is made clearer through examples:

**Example 6.4.17.** ...

Considering framed tangles leads to the *framed tangle category*  $\mathrm{Tang}_1^{fr}$ . In fact, on the line segment as a bordism between two points we have  $\mathbb{Z}$  many non isotopic framings corresponding to the *winding number* of normal vector fields. Similarly,  $S^1$  also has  $\mathbb{Z}$  many framings.

We noted last time that  $\mathrm{Tang}_1$  has left and right duals, one can check now that  $\mathrm{Tang}_1^{fr}$  also does. We see that the framed tangle category is very similar but it has  $\mathbb{Z}$  many morphisms between two points, instead of just one. This idea can be generalized with the concept of a ribbon category:

**Definition 6.4.18.** A ribbon category is a braided monoidal category  $\mathcal{C}$  in which:

1. every object  $X$  has a right dual  $X^\vee$ , thus satisfying

$$ev_X : X^\vee \otimes X \rightarrow 1$$

$$coev_X : 1 \rightarrow X \otimes X^\vee$$

which satisfies the snake relations/triangle identities (*right rigid category*),

2. there is a pivotal structure, that is a monoidal isomorphism

$$w : id_{\mathcal{C}} \implies (-)^{\vee\vee} \tag{6.39}$$

(these two properties are the defining ones for a *pivotal category*)

3. For any object  $X$ , we have a "twist"

$$\vartheta_X = (id \otimes ev_{X^\vee}) \circ (\beta_{X,X} \otimes id) \circ (id_X \otimes coev_X) \tag{6.40}$$

This satisfies

$$(\vartheta_X)^\vee = \vartheta_{X^\vee} \tag{6.41}$$

Here we're using an abuse of notation, by identifying  $X^{\vee\vee}$  with  $X$ .

**Example 6.4.19.** In  $\text{Tang}_1^{fr}$ , the  $\vartheta$  is exactly the picture with the blackboard framing. It remains to check property 3, which will be an exercise.

The definition of the dual of a map  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  was given in 5.1.16 and is given by the following composition:

$$f^\vee : Y^\vee \xrightarrow{id_{Y^\vee} \otimes coev_X} Y^\vee \otimes X \otimes X^\vee \xrightarrow{id_Y^\vee \otimes f \otimes id_{X^\vee}} Y^\vee \otimes Y \otimes X^\vee \xrightarrow{ev_Y \otimes id_{X^\vee}} X^\vee$$

**Lemma 6.4.20.** *Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a braided pivotal category. Then every object has a left dual, the twist is invertible and natural in  $X$  and  $\vartheta_1 = id_1$  and*

$$\vartheta_{X \otimes Y} = \beta_{Y,X} \circ \beta_{X,Y} \circ \vartheta_X \otimes \vartheta_Y \tag{6.42}$$

**Notation.** We denote the left dual of  $X$  by  $({}^\vee X, e\tilde{v}_X, co\tilde{e}v_x)$ .

**Example 6.4.21.**

- $\text{Vect}_k^{finitedim}$  is a ribbon category with the usual tensor product and braiding.
- $\text{Mod}_R^{fpp} = R - \text{Mod}^{fpp}$  is a ribbon category, where *fpp* stands for finitely presented and projective and  $R$  is a ring or  $k$  algebra.

However both these examples are *symmetric* monoidal

We would also like some more examples which are braided but *not* symmetric.

In order to do so, consider an algebra  $A$ , then  $A - \text{Mod}$  is a category. Now, which extra structure on  $A$  guarantees that  $A - \text{Mod}^{f.d.}$  is ribbon? Section 6.4.5 below is dedicated to answering this question. As a small preview we will be dealing with:

- representations of "quantum groups":
  - a "deformation" of  $\text{Rep } G = \text{Mod } U\mathfrak{g}$ ,
  - equivalently, a deformation of  $U\mathfrak{g}$  as a "Hopf algebra";
- representations of a "ribbon Hopf algebra"  $H$  which is a Hopf algebra with additional structure. We'll find  $H - \text{Mod}^{f.d.}$  to be a ribbon category. In particular we'll concentrate on  $G = SL_2$  and we take  $H = U_q(\mathfrak{sl}_2)$  where  $q$  is a root of unity.

Before that, we define a variation of the tangle category above and we'll have an interlude on knot theory.

**Definition 6.4.22.** Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a ribbon category.  $\text{Tang}_1^{\text{fr}}(\mathcal{C})$  is the following ribbon category, in which we "decorate with objects in  $\mathcal{C}$ ".

- objects: finite sequences

$$(V_1, \epsilon_1), \dots, (V_k, \epsilon_k) \tag{6.43}$$

where  $V_i \in \mathcal{C}$  and  $\epsilon_i = \pm 1$ . This corresponds to  $k$  points in  $\text{Tang}_1^{\text{fr}, \text{or}}$  in which  $\epsilon$  gives us the orientation of each point.

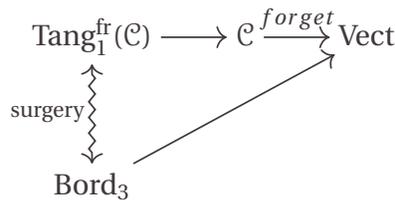
- morphisms: has underlying (isotopy classes of) framed oriented tangles + each component is labelled by  $V \in \mathcal{C}$  such that the source and target are labelled by  $(V, \pm 1)$ .
- Composition is stacking pictures but only if the labels match up.

The "correspondence" above is actually a forgetful functor  $\text{Tang}_1^{\text{fr}}(\mathcal{C}) \rightarrow \text{Tang}_1^{\text{fr}, \text{or}}$ , in which *or* means adding an orientation to the bordism.

**Proposition 6.4.23.** *If  $\mathcal{C}$  is a ribbon category, then there is a unique braided monoidal functor  $F : \text{Tang}_1^{\text{fr}}(\mathcal{C}) \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  such that*

- $F(V, +1) = V$  and  $F(V, -1) = V^\vee$
- $\forall V, W \in \mathcal{C}$  we have:

Finally, what does all this have to do with 3d TFTs?



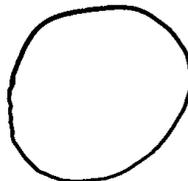
We will use:

- every 3-manifold arises from framed 1-tangles via *surgery*,
- two tangles giving the same 3 manifold can be related by *Kirby moves*,
- $F_{\mathcal{C}}$  is invariant under Kirby moves if  $\mathcal{C}$  is a *modular* tensor category.

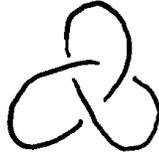
### 6.4.4 Interlude on knots, links and the Jones polynomial

**Example 6.4.24.** Examples of knots are the following:

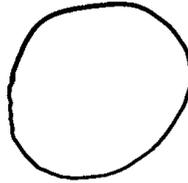
- the *unknot*



- the *trefoil*



- the *figure 8 knot*



and of links:

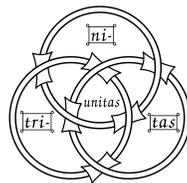
- the *Hopf link*



- the *Borromean rings*



*Remark* (Knots and links as symbols ✈ ). The Borromean rings are called 'Borromean' because they appear on the coat of arms of a noble family from Northern Italy named 'Borromeo'. However, this is not the only instance of such link in history. They often appear elsewhere with fascinating symbolism. For instance, they also symbolized the trinity



Interlocked triangles, which we now refer to as 'valknut', often appear in areas inhabited by Germanic peoples. Sometimes the valknut symbolizes the pagan God Odin. Some of these valknuts are topologically equivalent to the Borromean rings, such version is called the tricursal valknut. Here is an example of a tricursal valknut on an ornate slab of stone in Sweden called the Stora Hammars I.



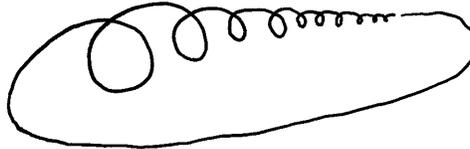
Another version of the valknut called the unicursal valknut is not topologically equivalent to the Borromean link: it is a knot and ambient isotopic to the trefoil. It is the current symbol of the German Football Association.



**Definition 6.4.25.** A link is a finite collection of circles smoothly embedded in  $\mathbb{R}^3$ :

$$\coprod_{i=1}^k S^1 \hookrightarrow \mathbb{R}^3 \tag{6.44}$$

In which smoothness is to exclude some pathological situations. For instance the following one



This is pathological because it should be intuitively be equivalent to the unknot and to show this we would need infinitely many Reidemeister moves of type 1 (see 6.4.4) to deform it to the unknot. However, the fundamental theorem of knot theory 6.4.30 manages to prove that two knots are equal if one can be deformed into the other with *finitely* many Reidemeister moves.

**Definition 6.4.26.** A knot is a link with one component ( $k = 1$ ).

**Definition 6.4.27.** Two links  $L_1, L_2 : \coprod_{i=1}^k S^1 \hookrightarrow \mathbb{R}^3$  are equivalent if there exists an ambient isotopy between them, i.e.  $H : \mathbb{R}^3 \times [0, 1] \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^3$  such that

- $H(-, 0) = id$
- $\forall t \in [0, 1], H(-, t)$  is a diffeomorphism
- $H(-, 1) \circ L_1 = L_2$

A goal of knot theory is to find an invariant of knots/links, i.e. an assignment

$$\{\text{knots/links}\} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}, \mathbb{Z}[A, A^{-1}], \dots \tag{6.45}$$

such that if two links are equivalent we get the same number, polynomial, ...

A link invariant is complete if it detects when 2 links are/are not equivalent.

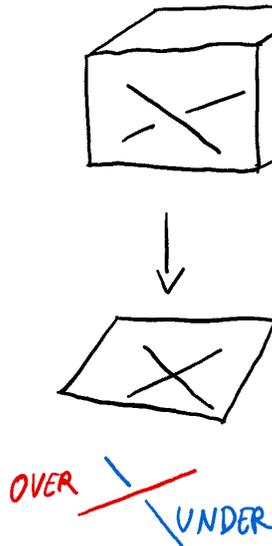
Concretely, we represent links and knots by 2d drawings, these drawings are called *Link diagrams*. Let  $L$  be a link and  $p : \mathbb{R}^3 \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^2$  a projection.

**Definition 6.4.28.**  $p(L)$  is regular if

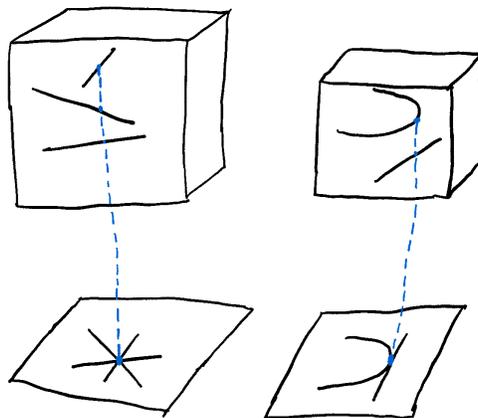
1. every point has at most 2 preimages in  $L$

2. intersections are transversal

**Definition 6.4.29.** A link diagram is a regular  $p(L)$  together with over/under information at each crossing. Visually:



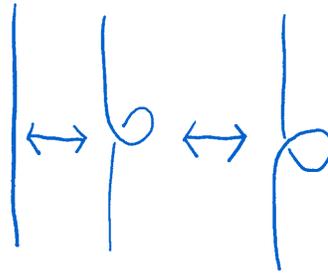
*Remark.* Given a link, we do *not* always get a link diagram  $p(L)$ , but we can always deform/perturb the embedding  $L : \coprod_{i=1}^k S^1 \hookrightarrow \mathbb{R}^3$  by ambient isotopy to  $L'$  which gives a link diagram. For instance, the following two projections are irregular:



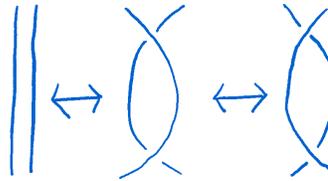
But such situation could be avoided by moving such links in a reasonable manner via ambient isotopies.

Our aim is to define a knot/link invariant by defining something on link diagrams. In order to do this we introduce Reidemeister moves, which are the following local changes in a link diagram:

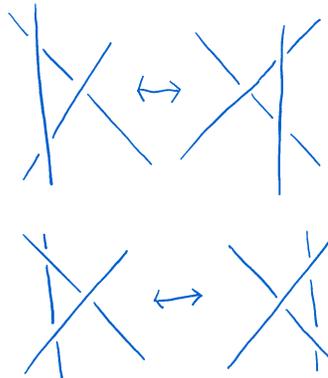
- (I or R1)



- (II or R2)



- (III or R3)



**Theorem 6.4.30** (Reidemeister). *Two links are equivalent if and only if their link diagrams are the same up to finitely many Reidemeister moves and isotopies in  $\mathbb{R}^2$ .*

This theorem is very important because it tells us that the link diagrams have all the information of the equivalence class of the link, so to determine (in)equivalence we can work with link diagrams.

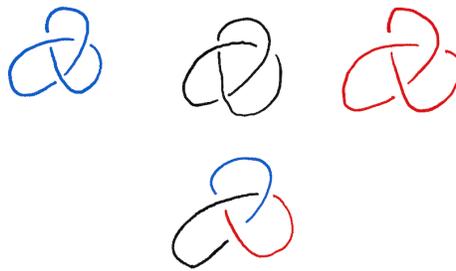
A first knot invariant is the "number of tricolorings": we color a link diagram with three colors according to the following rules

- each strand is one color
- at each crossing either all three strands are the same color, or they're all different.

**Example 6.4.31.** There are always three trivial colorings, the monochromatic ones. For the unknot, these are the only three tricolorings



while the trefoil has an additional one:



This shows that the trefoil knot is *not* equivalent to the unknot.

In order to prove that this is a knot invariant one should check that it is invariant under Reidemeister moves.

We now finally get to the Jones polynomial, found by Jones in 1984, and this presentation is from Kauffman in 1987. The motivation for it comes from operator algebras and the braid group representations.

**Definition 6.4.32.** The Kauffmann bracket of a link diagram  $D$  is a Laurent polynomial  $\langle D \rangle \in \mathbb{Z}[A, A^{-1}]$  defined by

- $\langle \bigcirc \rangle = 1$
- $\langle \begin{array}{c} \diagup \\ \diagdown \end{array} \rangle = A \cdot \langle \bigcirc \rangle + A^{-1} \cdot \langle \begin{array}{c} \diagdown \\ \diagup \end{array} \rangle$
- $\langle L \cup \bigcirc \rangle = (-A^2 - A^{-2}) \langle L \rangle$

**Example 6.4.33.**

$$\begin{aligned} \langle \bigcirc \bigcirc \rangle &= A \cdot \langle \bigcirc \bigcirc \rangle + A^{-1} \cdot \langle \bigcirc \bigcirc \rangle = \\ &= A(-A^2 - A^{-2}) \langle \bigcirc \rangle + A^{-1} \langle \bigcirc \rangle = \\ &= -A^3 - A^{-1} + A^{-1} = -A^3 \end{aligned}$$

There is an issue:

$$\langle \infty \rangle = \langle \bigcirc \rangle$$

and the last image is equivalent to the unknot, with an application of the first Reidemeister move, but

$$\langle \bigcirc \rangle = A^3$$

and

$$\langle \bigcirc \rangle = 1$$

This shows that the Kauffmann bracket is *not* a knot invariant, in particular it is not invariant under R1. It *is* however invariant under R2 and R3, in fact the coefficients in the definition of the bracket are exactly the ones that preserve R2 and R3.

From now on: links are oriented, meaning  $S^1$  comes with an orientation. So we can talk about oriented link invariants, for which we have oriented Reidemeister moves.

Now we would like to fix the problem with the Kauffmann bracket.

**Definition 6.4.34.** The sign of a crossing is

**Definition 6.4.35.** The writhe of an oriented link diagram  $D$  is the sum of the signs of the crossings:

$$w(D) = \sum_{c \text{ crossing in } D} \text{sign}(c) \quad (6.46)$$

**Lemma 6.4.36.** *The writhe is also invariant under R2 and R3, and changes under R1 as ...*

**Definition 6.4.37.** For any link  $L$ , define  $\chi(L) = (-A^3)^{-w(p(L))} \langle p(L) \rangle \in \mathbb{Z}[A^{-1}, A]$

**Theorem 6.4.38.** *This is a link invariant.*

**Example 6.4.39.** Hopf link vs two detached links

**Definition 6.4.40.** For any unoriented link  $L$ , the Jones polynomial of  $L$  is

$$V(L) = \chi(L)|_{A=t^{1/4}} \in \mathbb{Z}[t^{-1/2}, t^{1/2}] \quad (6.47)$$

**Example 6.4.41.** trefoil

$$V(D) = t + t^3 - t^4$$

Observe

- $V(\text{unknot}) = 1$
- skain relation: if  $L_+, L_-, L_0$  are the same link except for at one crossing, according to the following picture

then

$$t^{-1}V(L_+) - tV(L_-) + (t^{-1/2} - t^{1/2})V(L_0) = 0 \quad (6.48)$$

Explanation of problem of the Kauffmann bracket with R1:

**Definition 6.4.42 (Alternative).** A framed link is (a link together with a nonvanishing normal vector field as before) the image of a smooth embedding of  $\coprod_{i=1}^k S^1 \times [0, 1] \hookrightarrow \mathbb{R}^3$ .

*Remark.* This can be projected onto  $\mathbb{R}^2$  such that annuli are "flat", this is the "blackboard framing" from previously.

**Example 6.4.43.** We can give two framings on the unknot which are not equivalent:

**Theorem 6.4.44.**  $L, L'$  framed links,  $D, D'$  diagrams thereof using blackboard framings. Then  $L \sim L'$  (isotopy equivalence with framing) if and only if  $D$  is related to  $D'$  via R2, R3 and the modification of R1 given by

**Theorem 6.4.45.** *The Kauffmann bracket is a framed link invariant.*

Recall we had  $\text{Tang}_1^{or, fr}(\mathbb{C}) \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$  where  $\mathbb{C}$  is a ribbon category. Now, fix a  $V \in \mathbb{C}$ , we get an injection  $\text{Link}^{or, fr} \hookrightarrow \text{Tang}_1^{or, fr}(\mathbb{C})$  in which we decorate each strand (component) by  $V$ . The goal is then to find a specific ribbon category  $\mathbb{C}$  such that we get back the Jones polynomial. We'll find  $\mathbb{C} = U_q \mathfrak{sl}_2 - \text{Mod}^{f.d.}$ .

### 6.4.5 Making $A - \text{Mod}^{f.d.}$ into a ribbon category

We now want to add additional structures on an algebra  $A$  in such a way that  $A - \text{Mod}^{f.d.}$  becomes a ribbon category. We therefore need  $A - \text{Mod}^{f.d.}$  to have the following structures:

- monoidal structure,
- existence of (right) duals (right rigidity),
- braiding,
- pivotal structure,
- twist,

which we gradually construct in this order.

#### Monoidal structure

In order to do this, we will need additional structures on  $A$ , starting with the following.

**Definition 6.4.46.** A Hopf algebra in a braided strict monoidal category  $\mathcal{C}$  is

- a bialgebra  $(H, \mu, \eta, \Delta, \epsilon)$ , in which we represent all these maps as the following drawings

These maps should satisfy

$$(\mu \otimes \mu) \circ (id \otimes \beta \otimes id) \circ (\Delta \otimes \Delta) = \Delta \circ \mu \tag{6.49}$$

and

- antipode map  $S : H \rightarrow H$  depicted as satisfying

**Example 6.4.47.**

Take  $H = k[G]$ ,

$$\begin{aligned} \mu(g, h) &= gh & \eta(1) &= 1 \\ \Delta(g) &= g \otimes g & \epsilon(g) &= 1 & s(g) &= g^{-1} \end{aligned} \tag{6.50}$$

for Lie algebra  $\mathfrak{g}$ , let  $U\mathfrak{g}$  be its universal enveloping algebra, which we will define shortly. We then have

$$\text{Rep}^{f.d.} G \simeq U\mathfrak{g} - \text{Mod}^{f.d.} \tag{6.51}$$

we will then "deform" this in one of the exercises.

Recall that a Lie algebra is defined as follows.

**Definition 6.4.48.** A Lie algebra is a vector space with a bilinear map  $[-, -] : \mathfrak{g} \otimes \mathfrak{g} \rightarrow \mathfrak{g}$ , sending  $x \otimes y \mapsto [x, y]$ , called the Lie bracket, satisfying:

- anticommutativity:  $[x, x] = 0$  or  $[x, y] = -[y, x]$
- Jacobi identity:  $[x, [y, z]] + [y, [z, x]] + [z, [x, y]] = 0$

A homomorphism of Lie algebras  $\mathfrak{g}, \mathfrak{h}$  is a linear map  $\phi : \mathfrak{g} \rightarrow \mathfrak{h}$  such that  $\phi([x, y]_{\mathfrak{g}}) = [\phi(x), \phi(y)]_{\mathfrak{h}}$ .

**Example 6.4.49.**

1.  $\mathfrak{g} = \text{End}(V) = \mathfrak{gl}_V$ , with bracket given by the commutator  $[f, g] = f \circ g - g \circ f$ . There is also a sub Lie algebra  $\mathfrak{sl}_V := \{f \in \mathfrak{gl}_V : \text{tr } f = 0\}$ .

If for example we take  $V = \mathbb{R}^2$  we have  $\mathfrak{gl}_2 = \text{Mat}_{2,2}$  and  $\mathfrak{sl}_2 = \{A \in \text{Mat}_{2,2} : \text{tr } A = 0\}$ .

2. Let  $A$  be an associative algebra, then if we take the underlying vector space, with bracket given by the commutator, we get a Lie algebra. In other words, there is a forgetful functor:

$$\text{Alg} \rightarrow \text{Lie} \tag{6.52}$$

and its left adjoint is the concept of universal enveloping algebra which we will see more explicitly later on.

- 3.
4. smooth vector fields on a smooth manifold:  $\mathfrak{X} = \text{Der}(\mathbb{C}^\infty(M))$

Outlook: in physics we like to look at Lie groups, a smooth manifold with a group structure (i.e. a group object in the category of smooth manifolds). Since it's a manifold, we can look at its tangent space. The Lie algebra  $\mathfrak{g}$  of  $G$  is defined as  $T_e G$ .

Now, fix  $\mathfrak{g}$  a Lie algebra.

**Definition 6.4.50.** The tensor algebra of  $\mathfrak{g}$  is the (graded) algebra given by:

$$T(\mathfrak{g}) := \bigoplus_{n=0}^{\infty} \mathfrak{g}^{\otimes n} \tag{6.53}$$

with  $\mathfrak{g}^{\otimes n} \otimes \mathfrak{g}^{\otimes k} \rightarrow \mathfrak{g}^{\otimes(n+k)}$ .

There is a 2 sided ideal  $I(\mathfrak{g}) \subset T(\mathfrak{g})$  generated by  $\langle x \otimes y - y \otimes x - [x, y] \rangle$ . We can then define the universal enveloping algebra of  $\mathfrak{g}$  :

$$U\mathfrak{g} := T(\mathfrak{g})/I(\mathfrak{g}) \tag{6.54}$$

The universal enveloping algebra has the universal property that given an algebra  $A$  and a Lie algebra map  $\mathfrak{g} \rightarrow A$  there is a unique map  $U\mathfrak{g} \rightarrow A$  making the following diagram commute

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathfrak{g} & \longrightarrow & U\mathfrak{g} \\ & \searrow & \downarrow \text{---} \\ & & A \end{array} \tag{6.55}$$

**Claim.**  $U\mathfrak{g}$  is a Hopf algebra, with coalgebra structure given by:

- $\Delta : U\mathfrak{g} \rightarrow U\mathfrak{g} \otimes U\mathfrak{g}$
- $\epsilon : U\mathfrak{g} \rightarrow k$
- $S : U\mathfrak{g} \rightarrow U\mathfrak{g}$

In general, we'll now see that if  $A$  is a Hopf algebra, then  $A\text{-Mod}^{f.d.}$  is a monoidal category with duals.

**Theorem 6.4.51.** *Let  $(A, \mu, \eta)$  be a unital associative algebra and  $\Delta : A \rightarrow A \otimes A, \epsilon : A \rightarrow k$  linear maps. Then  $(A, \mu, \eta, \Delta, \epsilon)$  is a bialgebra if and only if  $(A\text{-Mod}, \otimes, (k, \epsilon))$  is monoidal.*

- Let  $M, N$  be  $A$ -modules, then the vector space  $M \otimes N$  is an  $A$ -module via

$$A \xrightarrow{\Delta} A \otimes A \longrightarrow \text{End}(M) \otimes \text{End}(N) \longrightarrow \text{End}(M \otimes N) \quad (6.56)$$

- $(k, \epsilon)$  is an  $A$ -module via

$$A \xrightarrow{\epsilon} \text{End}(k) \cong k \quad (6.57)$$

- associators and unitors are those from Vect.

## Rigidity

**Proposition 6.4.52.** *Let  $H$  be a Hopf algebra and  $M$  an  $H$ -module, then  $M^\vee := \text{Hom}(M, k)$  has an  $H$  action via the transpose of  $S$ , i.e. given  $\phi \in \text{Hom}(M, k)$ ,  $a \in H$  we get  $a \cdot \phi \in \text{Hom}(M, k)$  given by*

$$(a \cdot \phi)(m) := \phi(s(a) \cdot m) \quad (6.58)$$

*This is a left dual if  $M$  is finite dimensional. Now, if  $S$  is invertible,  ${}^\vee M = \text{Hom}(M, k)$  with  $(a \cdot \phi)(m) := \phi(s^{-1}(a) \cdot m)$  is a right dual if  $M$  is finite dimensional.*

**Corollary 6.4.53.** *If  $H$  is a Hopf algebra with  $S$  invertible, then  $H\text{-Mod}^{f.d.}$  is rigid monoidal.*

*Idea of proof of Proposition 6.4.52.* Check that  $ev_M, coev_M$  exhibiting dual in Vect are  $H$ -module maps.  $\square$

## Braiding

Recall: we want a ribbon category and we had a Hopf algebra, so we had a monoidal category with duals.

We're now using [Sch23] as a reference.

**Definition 6.4.54.** A quasi-triangular structure on a bi/Hopf algebra is a "universal  $R$ -matrix", i.e. an invertible element  $R \in A \otimes A$  such that  $\forall x \in A$  with

$$\Delta^{coop} : A \xrightarrow{\Delta} A \otimes A \xrightarrow{\tau_{A,A}} A \otimes A \quad (6.59)$$

the following are satisfied

1.  $\Delta^{coop}(x)R = R\Delta(x)$ , and
2. In  $A^{\otimes 3}$  we have

$$(\Delta \otimes id_A)(R) = R_{13}R_{23} \quad (6.60)$$

- 3.

$$(id_A \otimes \Delta)(R) = R_{13}R_{12} \quad (6.61)$$

in which  $R_{12} = R \otimes 1, R_{23} = 1 \otimes R, R_{13} = (\tau_{A,A} \otimes id_A)(1 \otimes R)$

**Example 6.4.55.** Any cocommutative bi/Hopf algebra has a canonical  $R$  matrix,  $R = 1 \otimes 1$ , since the first relation simply becomes  $\Delta = \Delta^{cop}$ , which is exactly the cocommutativity.

**Proposition 6.4.56** (4.2.3. in [Sch23]). *Let  $A$  be a bialgebra. Then a braiding on  $A\text{-Mod}^{(f.d.)}$  uniquely determines a quasitriangular structure on  $A$  and viceversa.*

*Proof strategy:* Given a braiding  $\beta$ , define the universal  $R$  matrix to be

$$R := \tau_{A,A}(\beta_{A,A}(1_A \otimes 1_A)) \quad (6.62)$$

in which  $\tau_{A,A}$  is the flip and  $\beta_{A,A}$  is the braiding. Then one can check properties 1. 2. and 3. above.

Now, the following is also true:

**Claim.** *Given  $R$  as above, the braiding can be recovered as follows:  $\beta_{U,V}(u \otimes v) = \tau_{U,V}(R(u \otimes v))$ , for arbitrary  $U, V \in A\text{-Mod}$ .*

So this motivates that if we are given a universal  $R$  matrix, we should define  $\beta$  as such, and one should check that it's actually a braiding.  $\square$

We're now using [Tin15] as a reference. Main example:  $U_q\mathfrak{sl}_2$ , Hopf algebra, not cocommutative but has a universal  $R$  matrix. Therefore  $U_q\mathfrak{sl}_2\text{-Mod}$  is braided monoidal. We get  $U_q\mathfrak{sl}_2$  from the cocommutative Hopf algebra  $U\mathfrak{sl}_2$  by "deforming" it.

$U_q\mathfrak{sl}_2$  is a  $\mathbb{C}(q)$ -algebra generators  $E, F, K, K^{-1}$  with relations:

$$\begin{aligned} KK^{-1} &= K^{-1}K = 1 \\ KEK^{-1} &= q^2E \\ KFK^{-1} &= q^{-2}F \\ [E, F] &= \frac{K - K^{-1}}{q - q^{-1}} \end{aligned}$$

We have an important 2 dimensional module ("representation") for  $U_q\mathfrak{sl}_2$ :  $V_1 \cong \mathbb{C}^2$  with basis  $v_1, v_{-1}$ . Now, how does  $U_q\mathfrak{sl}_2$  act? In this basis we write:

$$\begin{aligned} E &= \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \\ F &= \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \\ K &= \begin{pmatrix} q & 0 \\ 0 & q^{-1} \end{pmatrix} \end{aligned}$$

We also claimed there was a Hopf algebra structure, which we now make explicit. The comultiplication is given by

$$\begin{aligned} \Delta(E) &= 1 \otimes E + E \otimes K \\ \Delta(F) &= K^{-1} \otimes F + F \otimes 1 \\ \Delta(K) &= K \otimes K \\ \Delta(K^{-1}) &= K^{-1} \otimes K^{-1} \end{aligned}$$

the counit map:

$$\begin{aligned}\epsilon(E) &= \epsilon(F) = 0 \\ \epsilon(K) &= \epsilon(K^{-1}) = 1\end{aligned}$$

and we should check that these satisfy the required relations. In addition we need the antipode map:

$$\begin{aligned}S(E) &= -EK^{-1} \\ S(F) &= -KF \\ S(K) &= K^{-1} \\ S(K^{-1}) &= K\end{aligned}$$

We then get the monoidal category  $U_q\mathfrak{sl}_2 - \text{Mod}$ . If  $U, V$  are objects in  $U_q\mathfrak{sl}_2 - \text{Mod}$ , then so is  $U \otimes V$  in which we have

$$E(u \otimes v) = E_U \otimes K_V + U \otimes E_V \tag{6.63}$$

It is also braided...

From  $S$  we get the dual of  $V_1$ : as vector space  $V_1^\vee = \text{Hom}(V_1, \mathbb{C})$ , in which  $\hat{v}_1, \hat{v}_{-1}$  is the dual basis. This has a  $U_q\mathfrak{sl}_2 - \text{Mod}$  structure given by Equation 6.58.

Up to now we therefore get the following correspondence between the structures on  $A$  and those on  $A - \text{Mod}^{f.d.}$ :

bialgebra	$\leftrightarrow$	monoidal
Hopf algebra	$\leftrightarrow$	right rigid
Hopf with $S$ invertible	$\leftrightarrow$	rigid
quasi-triangular	$\leftrightarrow$	braiding

Let's make explicit the dual representation to  $V_1$ ,  $V_1^\vee = \text{Hom}(V, \mathbb{C}) = \langle \hat{v}_1, \hat{v}_{-1} \rangle$ , where  $\hat{v}_1$  and  $\hat{v}_{-1}$  are the dual basis.

Recall that we had the *decorated* tangle category. Let's take  $\mathcal{C} = U_q\mathfrak{sl}_2 - \text{Mod}^{f.d.}$  and let  $V = V_1$  the representation above. In particular we work with " $\text{Tang}_1^{fr,or}(V_1)$ "  $\subset$  " $\text{Tang}_1^{fr,or}(\mathcal{C})$ " in which we decorate everything with just  $V_1$ .

*Remark.* •  $A = q^{-1/2}$

- slightly different normalization:  $F(\text{unknot}) = -q - q^{-1}$ .
- What about the third relation of the Kauffmann bracket? It follows from monoidality!

## 6.5 Outlook: How to get a 3D TFT?

### 6.5.1 From knots to 3 manifolds: surgery

Given: a framed link  $L \subset S^3$  (so far  $L \subset \mathbb{R}^3$  but we now embed that into  $S^3$ ) with  $m$  components  $L = L_1 \cup \dots \cup L_m$  with  $L_i \cong S^1$ . Now:

- Choose closed tubular neighborhood  $U \subset S^3$  of link  $L$  such that  $U = U_1 \amalg \cdots \amalg U_m$ :

$$\begin{aligned} L_i &\cong S^1 \times \{0\} \\ \cap & \\ U_i &\xrightarrow[\phi]{\cong} S^1 \times D^2 \end{aligned} \tag{6.64}$$

framing of  $L_i \cong$  constant normal vector field on  $S^1 \times \{0\} \hookrightarrow S^1 \times D^2$ . Could also have the nonconstant framing, that turns around once.

- $\partial(S^3 \setminus \text{int}(U_1 \amalg \cdots \amalg U_m)) = \partial(U_1 \amalg \cdots \amalg U_m) \cong S^1 \times S^1 \amalg \cdots \amalg S^1 \times S^1$ ,  $m$  tori. Now glue in solid tori  $D^2 \times S^1$  (note that the order here matters) using identity as gluing map to get a closed connected 3 manifold.

**Exercise 6.5.1.** Try unknot with trivial framing.

Objective: 3d tqft. Surgery.

Start with a link  $L \subset S^3$  with  $L = L_1 \amalg \cdots \amalg L_m$  with  $L_i \cong S^1$ . We take a tubular neighborhood of  $L$ ,  $U = U_1 \amalg \cdots \amalg U_m$  with  $U_i \cong S^1 \times D^2$ . Let  $T := S^1 \times D^2$ , the full torus, and let  $\phi: U_i \xrightarrow{\cong} T$ . Now we can define

$$M_{L,\phi} := (S^3 \setminus \text{int}(\bigcup_{i=1}^m U_i)) \coprod_{\phi} T^m \tag{6.65}$$

surgery of  $S^3$  along  $L$  via  $\phi$ . However, the result depends on the choice of  $\phi$  and we'll see that it corresponds to a choice of framing on the knot.

If  $L$  is framed and oriented, we can choose a  $\phi$  as follows: let's restrict to one component  $L_i$ . We then have  $\partial U_i \cong S^1 \times S^1$  and the framing determines a "cycle" of  $S^1 \times S^1$  as can be seen in the drawing. In particular if the framing winds around  $k$  times then we get a cycle that winds around once in the longitudinal direction and  $k$  times in the other direction. This determines a diffeomorphism on the torus up to isotopy, called the "Dehn twist". We then compose with  $swap: S^1 \times S^1 \rightarrow S^1 \times S^1$ :

$$\begin{aligned} T &\longrightarrow T \\ \phi_i: \alpha_i &\longmapsto -\beta_i \\ \beta_i &\longmapsto \alpha_i \end{aligned} \tag{6.66}$$

In short, via  $\phi_i$  the induced framing on  $S^1 \times \{0\}$  is a constant normal framing. So framing on  $L$  determines/encodes/records the diffeomorphism  $\phi$ .

Notation:  $L$  framed  $M_L := M_{L,\phi}$  with  $\phi$  as above.

**Example 6.5.2.**

- $L = \emptyset$ , we then get  $M_L = S^3$ ,

- $L = \text{unknot}$  with constant framing:

$$\partial(S^3 \setminus \text{int } T) \cong S^1 \times S^1 \tag{6.67}$$

Now, as a warmup let's see how  $T \amalg_{\phi'} T = S^2$ :

Now,  $(S^3 \setminus \text{int } T) \amalg_{\phi'} T \dots$

We then have a well defined projection  $M_L \rightarrow S^1$  and the fibers of this map are  $S^2 = D^2 \amalg_{\partial D^2} D^2$ . In particular, the bundle is trivial:

**Fact.**  $M_L \cong S^1 \times S^2$ .

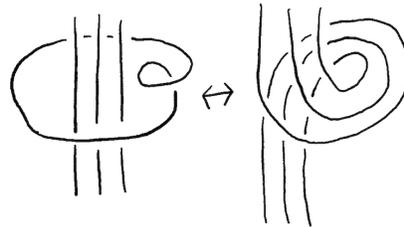
- $L = \text{unknot}$  with framing with one twist, we get  $M_L = S^3$

The last example is important because it shows that multiple framed links can give the same 3 manifold. However we have the following result:

**Theorem 6.5.3** (Lickorice-Wallace). *Any connected closed oriented 3-manifold can be obtained as  $M_L$  for some framed link  $L$  in  $S^3$  via surgery.*

We can therefore try to define a manifold invariant by defining it on framed links, but we have to make sure that links that give the same 3 manifold have the same invariant.

**Theorem 6.5.4** (Kirby's theorem).  *$M_L \cong M_{L'}$  if and only if  $L'$  is obtained from  $L$  by a finite sequence of isotopies and Kirby moves which are as follows:*



We can now get a Reshetikin-Turaev invariant, see for details [KRT97].

*Remark.* If  $L_1$  and  $L_2$  are not linked, then  $M_{L_1 \amalg L_2} = M_{L_1} \# M_{L_2}$ . Moreover,  $\tau(M_{L_1} \# M_{L_2}) = c \tau(M_{L_1}) \cdot \tau(M_{L_2})$  where  $c$  is a constant depending on the modular tensor category

We can give a **rough sketch** of the following theorem

**Theorem 6.5.5** (Turaev). *For any modular tensor category we have an oriented 3d TFT which generalizes the Reshetikin-Turaev invariants.*

Modular tensor categories are hard to define. The following definition is from [Run].

**Definition 6.5.6** (Modular Tensor Category). A modular tensor category is a strict  $k$ -linear<sup>13</sup> abelian semisimple ribbon category such that the index set is finite, every simple object is absolutely simple, and for which the  $s$ -matrix  $s = (s_{i,j})_{i,j \in I}$  with entries

$$s_{i,j} := s_{U_i, U_j} = \text{tr}(c_{U_i, U_j} \circ c_{U_j, U_i})$$

is non-degenerate. An element  $\mathcal{D} \in k$  is called rank of a modular tensor category  $\mathcal{C}$  if

$$\mathcal{D}^2 = \sum_{i \in I} (\dim(U_i))^2$$

Given a simple object  $U_i \in \mathcal{C}$ , also  $U_i^\vee$  is simple.

<sup>13</sup>I.e.  $\text{Vect}_k$ -enriched.

See 4.6.23 for the definition of abelian category.

*Remark.* In the original definition by Turaev ([Tur16], [Tur]) some conditions were weaker. It was enriched over  $\text{Mod}_R$ , with  $R$  being a commutative ring instead of a field  $k$ , semisimplicity was replaced by the weaker dominance property and instead of it being abelian, it was just additive.

**Example 6.5.7.**

- $\text{Vect}_k$
- $U_q \mathfrak{sl}_2 - \text{mod}^{\text{fd}}$  for  $q$  a root of unity

**Definition 6.5.8** (Simple object). An object  $U \in \mathcal{C}$  where  $\mathcal{C}$  is an abelian category is simple if it has no non-trivial subobjects, i.e. any injection  $V \hookrightarrow U$  is either the 0 object or an isomorphism.

**Definition 6.5.9** (Semisimple object). An object  $U \in \mathcal{C}$  where  $\mathcal{C}$  is an abelian category is semisimple if it is isomorphic to a direct sum of simple objects.

**Definition 6.5.10** (Semisimple category). An abelian category is semisimple if it only has semisimple objects.

**Definition 6.5.11** (Absolutely simple object). An object  $U \in \mathcal{C}$  where  $\mathcal{C}$  is an abelian  $k$ -linear category is called absolutely simple if and only if  $\text{Hom}(V, V) = k \text{id}_V$ . If  $\mathcal{C}$  is semisimple and  $k$  algebraically closed, then this is equivalent to a simple object.

## 6.6 Rough sketch of the cobordism hypothesis and extended topological field theories

Recall that a TFT is

- a way to organize invariants of smooth manifolds and compute them
- a way to make (some) quantum field theories mathematically rigorous

From the point of view of mathematics one might ask if we classify TFTs as we did for dimension 1 and 2 for any dimension  $n$ . From the point of view of physics one might ask if a TFT describing a certain physical system can be determined by the behavior of the system around a point, i.e. if it is fully local. The answer to these questions is yes and is called the cobordism hypothesis.

*Remark* (What is the cobordism hypothesis?). The cobordism hypothesis informally states that any TFT, at any dimension, can be classified/constructed just by observing where the TFT in question sends the point<sup>14</sup>, i.e. a bit more rigorously

*Theorem 6.6.1* (Cobordism hypothesis). *Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a monoidal  $(\infty, n)$ -category with duals<sup>15</sup>. Then the evaluation functor on a point, i.e. the functor sending  $\mathcal{Z} \mapsto \mathcal{Z}(\ast)$ , induces an equivalence*

$$ev_{\ast} : \text{Fun}^{\otimes}(\text{Bord}_n, \mathcal{C}) \rightarrow (\mathcal{C}^{\text{fd}})^{\cong}$$

where  $\mathcal{C}^{\text{fd}}$  is the full<sup>16</sup> monoidal  $(\infty, n)$ -category with duals<sup>17</sup>, i.e. we forget about all non-dualizable objects, and  $\mathcal{C}^{\cong}$  is the maximal underlying groupoid of  $\mathcal{C}$ , i.e. we forget about all morphisms that are not invertible.

It was formulated by James Dolan and John Baez in [BD95] and now we have only partial proofs, [Lur09], [AF17] and [GP22]. The one by Ayala and Francis relies has a different strategy to the first sketch by Lurie and relies on an unproved conjecture regarding factorization homology, see 4.8.28 for a definition of factorization homology.

*Remark* (What are extended TFTs?). After defining the cobordism hypothesis in this manner, a natural question is: how can TFTs of any dimension greater than 1 be classified by evaluating them at a point? If we stick to our definition, there are no points in any category of bordisms of dimension greater than 1. Fortunately, one can *extend* the bordism category, and consequently TFTs, and also talk about lower dimensions. Take as an example  $\text{Bord}_{2,1}^{\text{or}}$ . As we defined the bordism category, in this case the lowest dimension is 1, the objects are lines, not points. Nevertheless, one could treat the category of 2 dimensional bordisms as a 2-category, more specifically as a bicategory (see 4.8.32)<sup>18</sup>,  $\text{Bord}_{2,1,0}$  where objects are disjoint unions of points, 1-morphisms are oriented cobordisms between points and 2-morphisms are cobordisms between the 1-morphisms; and then define 2d-TFTs as an appropriate notion of symmetric monoidal functor between symmetric monoidal bicategories<sup>19</sup> (see 4.8.40 for a definition). However, to this we need to allow manifolds with corners, as the illustration of the downward extension of the torus shows (6.1).

<sup>14</sup>We will soon see a proof of the 1-dimensional case 6.1.

<sup>15</sup>We later give a definition of  $(\infty, n)$ -category with duals, see 5.1.27.

<sup>16</sup>i.e. there are all morphisms between the objects of the subcategory, i.e. no morphism from the category is forgotten.

<sup>17</sup>We gave a definition of  $(\infty, n)$ -category with duals, see 5.1.27.

<sup>18</sup>Since 1-morphisms do not compose strictly, but up to an appropriate notion of isomorphism.

<sup>19</sup>A detailed treatment of the 2d case is found in [SP14].

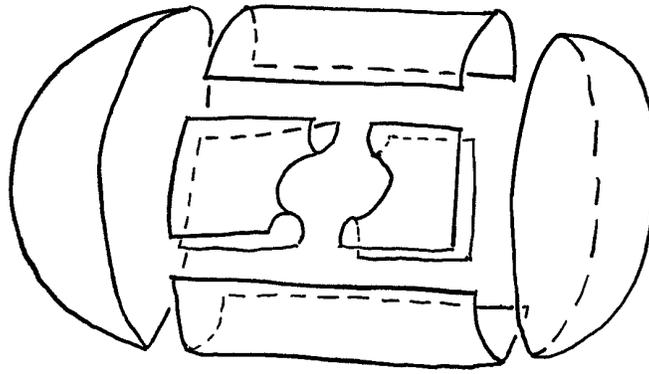


Figure 6.1: Visualization of a torus extended down to a point. The vertices of the corners of the 2-dimensional surfaces are points.

Treating a TFT as a symmetric monoidal weak 2-functor (see 4.8.35 for a definition) from a symmetric monoidal bicategory  $\text{Bord}_{n,n-1,n-2}$  (see 4.8.40 for a definition), instead of from a symmetric monoidal category is named 'once-extended TFT', e.g. see [Sch23]. There are two important results regarding once-extended TFTs:

1. One regards the classification of 2d-TFTs down to a point and is due to Christopher Schommer Pries who proved it in his PhD thesis

$$ev_* : \text{Fun}^{\otimes}(\text{Bord}_{2,1,0}^{\text{fr}}, \mathcal{B}) \xrightarrow{\cong} (\mathcal{B}^{2\text{-dualizable}})^{\cong}$$

2. The other, although still conjectural<sup>20</sup>, classifies 3d-TFTs via the evaluation on the circle

$$ev_{S^1} : \text{Fun}^{\otimes}(\text{Bord}_{3,2,1}^{\text{fr}}, \text{ModTensor}) \xrightarrow{\cong} (\text{ModTensor}^{2\text{-dualizable}})^{\cong}$$

hence  $\mathcal{Z}(S^1) = \mathcal{C}$  where  $\mathcal{C}$  is a modular tensor category, i.e. a special ribbon category which can be seen as a categorified commutative Frobenius algebra.

However, as one can infer from the aforementioned cobordism hypothesis, one can also extend downward to dimension 0 any  $n$ -dimensional TFT and it was first proposed by Daniel Freed in [Fre94]. To be precise, one nowadays does not want to only extend downwards but also upwards, i.e. to not work with  $n$ -categories, i.e.  $(n, n)$ -categories, but wants to work with  $(\infty, n)$ -categories, i.e. categories where morphisms of dimension strictly greater than  $n$  are invertible, because of technical reasons<sup>21</sup>. Sketchily, the  $(\infty, n)$  category of bordisms will have points as objects, bordisms between points as 1-morphisms, bordisms between bordisms between points as 2-morphisms, ..., bordisms between bordisms between bordisms...<sup>22</sup> as  $n$ -morphisms, diffeomorphisms between  $n$ -dimensional bordisms as  $n + 1$ -morphisms, isotopies between diffeomorphisms as  $n + 2$ -morphisms, isotopies between isotopies between diffeomorphisms as  $n + 3$ -morphisms, ... and so on

<sup>20</sup>It was first stated by Kevin Walker and then some progress was made by Turaev, see [Tur16] for more on this.

<sup>21</sup>For example, the argument sketched in [Lur09] is crucially a proof by induction on  $n$  and in order to understand the  $n + 1$ -morphisms of  $\text{Bord}_{n+1}$  one must understand such  $n + 1$ -morphisms in  $\text{Bord}_n$  which are absent if we treat  $\text{Bord}_n$  as an  $n$ -category and not  $(\infty, n)$ -category. In short, that would just not be possible without such  $\infty$ -categorical machinery.

<sup>22</sup>There is exactly  $n - 1$  times 'between bordisms' after the first instance of 'bordisms',  $n$ -morphisms are morphisms between  $(n - 1)$ -morphisms.

infinitely many times. This is an example of a  $(\infty, n)$ -category, since isotopies of diffeomorphisms and diffeomorphisms are in fact invertible, whereas oriented bordisms not necessarily. One can find more on this higher category of bordisms in [CS19].

### 6.6.1 Alternative formulation of the cobordism hypothesis of TFTs

It is not evident why the classification of extended TFTs by dualizable objects in the target category goes by the name 'cobordism hypothesis'. The reason is that historically (in [BD95]) it was not only formulated as the equivalence categories

$$ev_* : \text{Fun}^\otimes(\text{Bord}_n^{\text{fr}}, \mathcal{C}) \simeq (\mathcal{C}^{\text{fd}})^{\cong}$$

but also in an equivalent way that is a vast generalization of the fact that  $\Omega_0^{\text{or}}$  is the free abelian group on one generator, i.e.  $\mathbb{Z}$ .

**Theorem 6.6.2** (Cobordism Hypothesis).  *$\text{Bord}_n^{\text{fr}}$  is equivalent to the free symmetric monoidal  $(\infty, n)$ -category with duals on one object.*

This is equivalent to the usual formulation via abstract nonsense. We first show how this works for the cobordism hypothesis in one dimension, which coincides with the classification we already proved, 6.1.

#### Categorification of $\Omega_0^{\text{or}} = \mathbb{Z}$

We already told a story about TFTs being a categorification of bordism invariants, see 6. This story fits very well with the cobordism hypothesis in dimension 1 and the fact that  $\Omega_0^{\text{or}}$  is the free abelian group on one generator.

The cobordism hypothesis can be formulated in dimension 1 as follows

**Theorem 6.6.3** (Cobordism hypothesis for  $n = 1$ ).  *$\text{Bord}_{1,0}^{\text{fr}}$  is equivalent to the free symmetric monoidal category with duals on one object. More precisely,  $\text{Bord}_{1,0}^{\text{fr}}$  is equivalent to the image of the free functor  $D\text{Free} : \text{Cat} \rightarrow \text{SymmMonwDuals}$  on the trivial category  $\mathbb{1}_{\text{Cat}}$ , where  $\text{SymmMonwDuals}$  denotes the category of symmetric monoidal categories with duals.*

$$\text{Bord}_{1,0}^{\text{fr}} \simeq D\text{Free}(\mathbb{1}_{\text{Cat}})$$

This is equivalent to the classification of 1TFTs, the theorem we proved stating that

**Theorem 6.6.4** (Classification of 1TFTs).

$$ev_* : \text{Fun}^\otimes(\text{Bord}_1^{\text{or}}, \mathcal{C}) \simeq (\mathcal{C}^{\text{fd}})^{\cong}$$

First, note that there are no non-trivial tangent bundles on 1-bordisms and thus there is no difference between framed and oriented bordisms. Thus, one can infer from the classification of 1TFTs a version of the cobordism hypothesis in dimension  $n = 1$  as we first stated it:

$$ev_* : \text{Fun}^\otimes(\text{Bord}_1^{\text{fr}}, \mathcal{C}) \simeq (\mathcal{C}^{\text{fd}})^{\cong}$$

Then, we make precise what is a free symmetric monoidal category with duals on one object.

**Notation.** We denote as  $\text{SymmMonwDUALS}$  the category of symmetric monoidal categories with dual objects.

Now we prove the following theorem in three steps

**Theorem 6.6.5.** *For a symmetric monoidal category with duals  $\mathcal{C}$  it holds that*

$$\text{Fun}^{\otimes}(\text{Bord}_{1,0}^{\text{or}}, \mathcal{C}) \stackrel{1}{\simeq} \text{Fun}^{\otimes}(\text{DFree}(\mathbb{1}_{\text{Cat}}), \mathcal{C}^{\cong}) \stackrel{2}{\simeq} \text{Fun}(\mathbb{1}_{\text{Cat}}, \text{DForget}(\mathcal{C}^{\cong})) \stackrel{3}{\simeq} \mathcal{C}^{\cong}$$

*Proof.* 1. Consider the forgetful functor  $\text{DForget} : \text{SymmMonwDUALS} \rightarrow \text{Cat}$ . Like all forgetful functors it has a left adjoint  $\text{DFree} : \text{Cat} \rightarrow \text{SymmMonwDUALS}$ . The application of this functor to the trivial category<sup>23</sup>  $\mathbb{1}_{\text{Cat}}$  is the free symmetric monoidal category on one object.

From the proofs 6.1 and 6.1 of the classification of 1TFTs one can easily infer that  $\text{Bord}_1^{\text{fr}}$  is equivalent to the free symmetric monoidal category with duals on one object,  $\text{Bord}_1^{\text{fr}} \simeq \text{DFree}(\mathbb{1}_{\text{Cat}})$  and thereby proving the alternative formulation of the cobordism hypothesis in dimension 1 we just provided. Moreover, recall that  $\text{Fun}^{\otimes}(\text{Bord}_{1,0}^{\text{or}}, \mathcal{C})$  is a groupoid and hence the functor

$$\text{Fun}^{\otimes}(\text{Bord}_{1,0}^{\text{or}}, \mathcal{C}) \rightarrow \text{Fun}^{\otimes}(\text{DFree}(\mathbb{1}_{\text{Cat}}), \mathcal{C})$$

can be restricted to the equivalence

$$\text{Fun}^{\otimes}(\text{Bord}_{1,0}^{\text{or}}, \mathcal{C}) \stackrel{1}{\simeq} \text{Fun}^{\otimes}(\text{DFree}(\mathbb{1}_{\text{Cat}}), \mathcal{C}^{\cong})$$

2. Note that there is another way to phrase adjunctions, which we formulated in the appendix, B.0.5, and also that the functor in  $\text{SymmMonwDUALS}$  are just symmetric monoidal functors, since functors preserve dual objects, as we proved in 6.1. From the free-forgetful adjunction, one can infer that for an arbitrary symmetric monoidal category with duals  $\mathcal{C}$

$$\text{Fun}^{\otimes}(\text{DFree}(\mathbb{1}_{\text{Cat}}), \mathcal{C}^{\cong}) \stackrel{2}{\simeq} \text{Fun}(\mathbb{1}_{\text{Cat}}, \mathcal{C}^{\cong})$$

where on the right hand side  $\mathcal{C}$  has forgotten about its duals and its monoidal structure generally.

3. Now we prove that  $\text{Fun}(\mathbb{1}_{\text{Cat}}, \text{DForget}(\mathcal{C}^{\cong})) \stackrel{3}{\simeq} \mathcal{C}^{\cong}$ .  $\text{Fun}(\mathbb{1}_{\text{Cat}}, \mathcal{C})$  consists of functors

$$F(*) = X$$

$$F(\text{id}_*) = \text{id}_X$$

for all  $X \in \mathcal{C}$ . The morphisms of  $\text{Fun}(\mathbb{1}_{\text{Cat}}, \mathcal{C})$  are exactly given by the morphisms in  $\mathcal{C}$ : given two functors  $F, G \in \text{Fun}(\mathbb{1}_{\text{Cat}}, \mathcal{C})$  such that  $F(*) = X$  and  $G(*) = Y$ , there is a natural transformation  $F \Rightarrow G$ , if and only if there is a morphism  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  in  $\mathcal{C}^{\cong}$  because so the square

$$\begin{array}{ccc} * & \xrightarrow{F} & X \\ \text{id}_* \downarrow & & \downarrow f \\ * & \xrightarrow{G} & Y \end{array}$$

<sup>23</sup>i.e. the category just with one-object and its identity morphism.

commutes. Clearly the functor  $\text{Fun}(\mathbb{1}_{\text{Cat}}, D\text{Forget}(\mathcal{C}^{\cong}) \rightarrow \mathcal{C}^{\cong}$  is essentially surjective since for every object  $X \in \mathcal{C}^{\cong}$  there is a functor  $F \in \text{Fun}(\mathbb{1}_{\text{Cat}}, D\text{Forget}(\mathcal{C}^{\cong}))$  such that  $F(*) = X$ . Moreover, since any natural transformation in  $\text{Fun}(\mathbb{1}_{\text{Cat}}, D\text{Forget}(\mathcal{C}^{\cong}))$  is given by a morphism in  $\mathcal{C}^{\cong}$ ,  $\text{Fun}(\mathbb{1}_{\text{Cat}}, D\text{Forget}(\mathcal{C}^{\cong}) \rightarrow \mathcal{C}^{\cong}$  is fully faithful. Thus, we can conclude that

$$\text{Fun}(\mathbb{1}_{\text{Cat}}, D\text{Forget}(\mathcal{C}^{\cong})) \stackrel{3}{\cong} \mathcal{C}^{\cong}$$

□

*Remark.* The assumption that  $\mathcal{C}$  has duals does not imply a loss of generality since the functor

$$\text{Fun}^{\otimes}(\text{Bord}_{1,0}^{\text{or}}, \mathcal{C}^{\text{fd}}) \rightarrow \text{Fun}^{\otimes}(\text{Bord}_{1,0}^{\text{or}}, \mathcal{C})$$

is canonically an equivalence since  $\text{Bord}_{1,0}^{\text{or}}$  has duals and always lands in  $\mathcal{C}^{\text{fd}}$

Thus, one can infer the usual formulation as an equivalence by the transitivity of equivalences of categories (a composition of equivalences is an equivalence), from the fact that  $\text{Bord}_{1,0}$  is the free symmetric monoidal category with duals and abstract nonsense.

# Appendix A

## Infinity categories

 This is WIP, but the section on homotopy co/limits should already make sense.

### A.1 Homotopy co/limits

This preamble is based on [Har19].

An adoptable perspective to do (topological<sup>1</sup>) homotopy theory is working in the homotopy category of topological spaces<sup>2</sup>  $\text{hTop}$ , that is the category of topological spaces and continuous maps between them up to homotopy. This has however several drawbacks:

- we can intuit that some information gets lost, where are all the higher homotopies between homotopies?
- it is not bicomplete, i.e. it does not have all co/limits, oppositely to  $\text{Top}$ , the not-homotopy-category of topological spaces
- the co/limits that interest us, i.e. homotopy co/limits, are not determined by universal properties

A revolutionary way to do homotopy theory is to avoid working in the  $\text{hTop}$  and work in the  $\infty$ -category of topological spaces. This category is bicomplete and we can phrase the desired homotopy co/limits via the universal properties phrasable with the underlying categorical structure. This strategy to pass to  $\infty$ -categories generalize in 2 ways:

- one can talk about homotopy co/limits also in other categories
- all diagrams commute homotopy coherently, not only the ones describing co/limits

Thanks to this new version of commutativity, we can do powerful stuff, for instance defining  $\mathbb{E}_n$ -algebras, as we did in 4.8.1.

Now we sketch more precisely how such homotopy and non-homotopy co/limits work, but see [Har19, 2.6] for a much more detailed summary and [Lan21, Section 4] for a thorough introduction. Very generally, homotopy co/limits are objects making certain

---

<sup>1</sup>Topology is the motherland of homotopy theory. However homotopy theory is travelling to other places such as representation theory, e.g. [Str22] or Gaitsgory-Rozenblyum's work, or algebraic geometry, e.g. derived algebraic geometry of Toen, Vezzosi and Lurie.

<sup>2</sup>By 'topological spaces' we mean nice ones, i.e. CW-complexes or similar ones, for instance compactly generated weakly Hausdorff.

diagrams commute via homotopies, i.e. homotopy coherently and with certain universal properties. Every co/limit in an  $\infty$ -category works as a homotopy co/limit. To sensibly talk about this, we first need to define what are co/limits in ordinary categories. Fortunately, they work similarly.

**Definition A.1.1** (Terminal, initial, zero objects). A terminal object in a category  $\mathcal{C}$  is an object  $*$   $\in \mathcal{C}$  such that for every  $X \in \mathcal{C}$  there is a unique morphism  $X \rightarrow *$

An initial object in a category  $\mathcal{C}$  is an object  $\emptyset \in \mathcal{C}$  such that for every  $X \in \mathcal{C}$  there is a unique morphism  $\emptyset \rightarrow X$

A zero object is an object that is both initial and final. A category is called pointed if it has a zero object.

**Definition A.1.2** (Diagram). Until now, we spoke of diagrams informally, there is however a precise definition. Given a small<sup>3</sup> category  $\mathcal{J}$ , a diagram of shape  $\mathcal{J}$  in  $\mathcal{C}$  is a functor  $D : \mathcal{J} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$

**Definition A.1.3** (Co/limits). Given a category  $\mathcal{J}$  we can construct

- the cone<sup>4</sup> of  $\mathcal{J} : \mathcal{J}^{\triangleleft}$  by adding an initial object to  $\mathcal{J}$
- the cocone<sup>5</sup> of  $\mathcal{J} : \mathcal{J}^{\triangleright}$  by adding a terminal object to  $\mathcal{J}$

Given a diagram  $D$  of shape  $\mathcal{J}$  in  $\mathcal{C}$  and  $X \in \mathcal{C}$  we have

- a cone over  $D$  that is a natural transformation  $\gamma : X \Rightarrow D$ , where  $X$  denotes the functor sending every object in  $\mathcal{J}$  to  $X$ . So, because of naturality of  $\gamma$  for  $M \xrightarrow{f} N$  in  $\mathcal{J}$  there is the following commutative diagram:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & X(N) = X = X(M) & \\ \gamma_N \swarrow & & \searrow \gamma_M \\ D(N) & \xrightarrow{D(f)} & D(M) \end{array}$$

We have then also the category of cones over  $D$ . An equivalent description of a cone over  $D$  is a functor  $\mathcal{J}^{\triangleleft} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  hence the category of cones is the functor category  $\text{Fun}_D(\mathcal{J}^{\triangleleft}, \mathcal{C})$ .

- a cocone over  $D$  that is a natural transformation  $\eta : D \Rightarrow X$  and because of naturality of  $\eta$  for  $M \xrightarrow{f} N$  in  $\mathcal{J}$  there is the following commutative diagram:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} D(N) & \xrightarrow{D(f)} & D(M) \\ \eta_N \searrow & & \swarrow \eta_M \\ & X(N) = X = X(M) & \end{array}$$

We have then also the category of cocones over  $D$ . An equivalent description of a cocone over  $D$  is a functor  $\mathcal{J}^{\triangleright} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  hence the category of cocones is the functor category  $\text{Fun}_D(\mathcal{J}^{\triangleright}, \mathcal{C})$

<sup>3</sup>This means that the collection of objects and morphisms are both sets

<sup>4</sup>Aka left cone

<sup>5</sup>Aka right cone

Then,

- the limit of the diagram  $D$  is a terminal object in the category of cones over  $\mathcal{J}$ , i.e.  $\text{Fun}_D(\mathcal{J}^{\triangleleft}, \mathcal{C})$
- the colimit of the diagram  $D$  is an initial object in the category of cocones over  $\mathcal{J}$ , i.e.  $\text{Fun}_D(\mathcal{J}^{\triangleright}, \mathcal{C})$

In order to get a definition of homotopy co/limit or  $(\infty, 1)$ -co/limit, just substitute your favourite model of  $\infty$ -category with 'category' in this definition.

**Example A.1.4** (Cartesian product). We previously defined the cartesian product of two objects by saying that some diagram commutes and the product has a certain universal property (4.6.5). Such cartesian product is a limit over a diagram shaped as a discrete category with two objects. Let us name this discrete category with two different objects  $\mathcal{J} = \{0, 1\}$ , discrete means that there are only the identity morphisms  $id_0$  and  $id_1$ . Given  $\mathcal{C}$  an arbitrary category, observe a diagram

$$\begin{aligned}
 D : \mathcal{J} &\rightarrow \mathcal{C} \\
 0 &\mapsto A \\
 1 &\mapsto B
 \end{aligned}$$

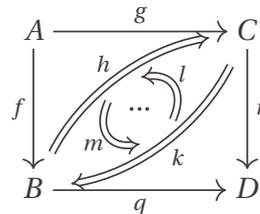
Then, a cartesian product  $A \times B$  is the limit over  $D$

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 & & Y & & \\
 & f \swarrow & \downarrow \exists! u & \searrow g & \\
 A & \xleftarrow{pr_1} & A \times B & \xrightarrow{pr_2} & B
 \end{array}$$

The two projections exist because  $A \times B$  is a cone: a cone is an initial object in the shape category  $\mathcal{J}$  and  $D$  is a functor, so it imports the unique morphisms from the initial object to where 0 and 1 are mapped, i.e. to  $A$  and  $B$ .

$u$  exists and is unique because  $A \times B$  is the terminal object in the category of cones. The two smaller triangles commute because of the naturality of the morphism  $u$ : recall that the category of cones is a functor category hence morphisms between cones are natural transformations and note that  $pr_1$  and  $f$  for instance are images of morphisms in  $\mathcal{J}^{\triangleleft}$

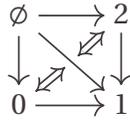
We already sketched what might mean that a diagram is homotopy coherently commutative in the case of an  $\mathbb{E}_1$ -algebra (4.8.1). For the sake of clarity we sketch it here again, in a more general setting. Recall that all morphisms higher than 1 in an  $\infty$ -category are weakly invertible.



This diagram does not commute strictly, but via homotopies. This means that  $h : q \circ f \simeq r \circ g : k$ , instead of what we are used to:  $q \circ f = r \circ g$ . Not only this however, it is the case that  $k \circ h \simeq id_{q \circ f}$  and  $h \circ k \simeq id_{r \circ g}$ , instead of the usual strict invertibility, and thus via the 3-morphisms  $l$  and  $m$ , the 2-morphisms  $k$  and  $h$  are homotopic, i.e.  $l : k \simeq h : m$ . Then there will be some explicit 4-morphisms witnessing that  $m \simeq l$ , and so on to  $\infty$ .

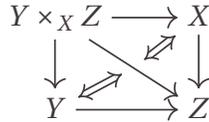
**Example A.1.5** (Homotopy pullback/ $(\infty, 1)$ -pullback). Let  $\mathcal{J}$  be an  $\infty$ -category with objects and 1-morphisms  $0 \rightarrow 1 \leftarrow 2$  and  $D : \mathcal{J} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  be a diagram. To be rigorous, we would need to define what is an  $\infty$ -functor. However, since this necessitates getting our hands dirty with a model, we prefer to remain loose: an  $\infty$ -functor is an assignment that respects composition and identity morphisms<sup>6</sup> not only on 1-morphisms, but for also all higher invertible morphisms. Then, an  $\infty$ -pullback of is the homotopy limit of  $D$ .

We now unpack what this means. A cone of  $\mathcal{J}$ , where  $\emptyset$  is the new initial object looks like this:

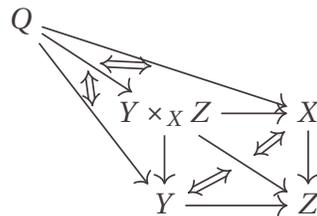


Where the two small triangles commute via higher morphisms denoted with  $\Leftrightarrow$ .

Let  $D(1) = X$ ,  $D(2) = Y$  and  $D(0) = Z$ . Then, the  $\infty$ -pullback of  $D$  is the terminal object in the  $\infty$ -functor  $\infty$ -category  $\text{Fun}_D(\mathcal{J}, \mathcal{C})$ . Denote the image of  $\emptyset$  of such pullback with  $Y \times_X Z$ . Then there is the following homotopy coherent diagram



Because the  $\infty$ -pullback is a functor and thus preserves the homotopy-coherent commutativity of diagrams in the shape  $\mathcal{J}$ , by preserving compositionality for all  $n$ -morphisms. Since it is the terminal object in the category of cones over the diagram  $D$  for every other cone mapping  $\emptyset$  to an object  $Q \in \mathcal{C}$ , then there is a unique morphism  $Q \rightarrow Y \times_X Z$  making the following diagram commute homotopy coherently



The two small triangles formed by morphisms that have  $Q$  as source and by the projections of  $Y \times_X Z$  (the ones on the upper left) commute because of the naturality of morphisms in  $\text{Fun}_D(\mathcal{J}^{\triangleleft}, \mathcal{C})$

**Notation.** From now on, when we are talking about commutative diagrams in an  $\infty$ -category, we do not write the double arrows  $\Leftrightarrow$  symbolizing the higher morphisms that make the diagram commute.

There is the dual notion of homotopy pullback: the homotopy pushout, which we now use to define suspensions in the next chapter of the appendix.

<sup>6</sup>i.e. is functorial.

# Appendix B

## What are spectra? ✈️

This subsection is based off [Jac17], [ADA78], [Rok19], [MG24], [Den20] and [Max21].

Stable homotopy theory is the branch of homotopy theory that studies phenomena and structures that are stable, i.e. that can occur in any dimension, or in any sufficiently large dimension independently of the exact dimension. The tool used to reach higher dimensions is very often suspension<sup>1</sup>, this is why sometimes stable homotopy theory is characterized as the phenomena that are stable under suspension.

The paradigmatic example of stable phenomena are the stable homotopy groups of the sphere are the homotopy groups of the sphere  $\pi_{n+i}(S^n)$  such that  $n > i + 1$ . They are stable because thanks to Freudenthal's suspension theorem implies that the suspension functor<sup>2</sup>  $S^n \xrightarrow{\Sigma} S^{n+1}$  induces an isomorphism on certain homotopy groups of the sphere: the stable ones, i.e. where  $n > i + 1$

$$\pi_{n+i}(S^n) \cong \pi_{n+i+1}(S^{n+1})$$

The investigation of stable phenomena is achieved via spectra, i.e. sequence of pointed spaces with maps relating them one another. For instance the stable homotopy group of the sphere are exactly the homotopy groups of the sphere spectrum. This begs the question: what are spectra?

We already have seen some spectra and definitions of some kinds of spectra in 3.4.1, e.g. the sphere spectrum and the suspension spectrum. In that section, we defined suspension as a quotient. However, one can define a suspension in full generality, i.e. for any pointed  $\infty$ -category, via certain homotopy colimits.

**Definition B.0.1** (Suspension). Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a pointed<sup>3</sup>  $\infty$ -category with the zero object denoted by  $0$  and let  $X \in \mathcal{C}$ . Then the suspension  $\Sigma X$  of  $X$  is the pushout

$$\begin{array}{ccc} X & \longrightarrow & 0 \\ \downarrow & \lrcorner & \downarrow \\ 0 & \longrightarrow & \Sigma X \end{array}$$

**Definition B.0.2** (Suspension functor). Given a pointed  $\infty$ -category  $\mathcal{C}$  the assignment  $X \mapsto \Sigma X$  gives rise to a functor  $\Sigma : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$

Dually, one can define the loop space of an object

<sup>1</sup>We define it in the next subsection.

<sup>2</sup>Do not fear if you do not know what it is yet, we define it in the next subsection.

<sup>3</sup>A category with a zero object: an object that is both initial and final.

**Definition B.0.3** (Loop space). Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a pointed  $\infty$ -category and let  $X \in \mathcal{C}$ . Then the loop space  $\Omega X$  is the pullback

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \Omega X & \longrightarrow & 0 \\ \downarrow & \lrcorner & \downarrow \\ 0 & \longrightarrow & X \end{array}$$

**Definition B.0.4** (Loop space functor). Given a pointed  $\infty$ -category  $\mathcal{C}$  the assignment  $X \mapsto \Omega X$  gives rise to a functor  $\Omega : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$

*Remark.* One very important property of the loop space functor is the shift in homotopy groups:

$$\pi_n(\Omega X) = \pi_{n+1}(X)$$

If you took a class on algebraic topology, you most probably already witnessed this phenomenon, the fundamental group is defined as

$$\pi_0(\Omega X) = \pi_1(X)$$

*Remark.* As already mentioned in 4.8.1, a loop space is an example of  $\mathbb{E}_1$ -space and  $n$ -iterated loop spaces are  $\mathbb{E}_n$ -spaces by the Dunn additivity theorem.

**Definition B.0.5** (Alternative definition of adjunction). We defined adjoint functors via the natural transformations unit and counit (4.4.1). There is however an equivalent formulation: two  $\infty$ -functors  $\mathcal{C} \xrightleftharpoons[L]{R} \mathcal{D}$  form an adjunction  $L \dashv R$ , i.e. where  $L$  is the left adjoint and  $R$  is the right adjoint, if between the two Hom- $\infty$ -functors

$$\mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{C}}(L(-), -) : \mathcal{C}^{\mathrm{op}} \times \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathrm{Grpd}_{\infty}$$

and

$$\mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}}(-, R(-)) : \mathcal{D}^{\mathrm{op}} \times \mathcal{D} \rightarrow \mathrm{Grpd}_{\infty}$$

there is a natural isomorphism  $\mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{C}}(L(-), -) \simeq \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}}(-, R(-))$

This definition is easily derivable from the one with units we gave previously, given the unit  $\epsilon : id_{\mathcal{D}} \Rightarrow R \circ L$  and  $X \in \mathcal{C}$  and  $Y \in \mathcal{D}$ , the following holds because of one of the triangle identities:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{C}}(L(Y), X) & \xrightarrow{\quad \cong \quad} & \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}}(Y, R(X)) \\ & \searrow & \nearrow \\ & \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}}(R(L(Y)), R(X)) & \end{array}$$

*Remark* (Suspension-loop adjunction). There is an adjunction  $\Sigma \dashv \Omega$  and thus for any pointed  $\infty$ -category  $\mathcal{C}$  it holds that  $\mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{C}}(\Sigma -, -) \simeq \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{C}}(-, \Omega -)$ . If it is not sufficiently clear from the fact that  $\Omega X = 0 \times_X 0$  and  $\Sigma X = 0 \amalg_X 0$ , do not worry. In the case that it interests us the most it can be seen from another perspective. Recall that for  $X \in \mathrm{Top}_*$   $\Sigma X = X \wedge S^1$  and  $\Omega X = \mathrm{Map}_*(S^1, X)$  and that  $\mathrm{Top}_*$  is cartesian monoidal closed, i.e. for any  $A, B, C \in \mathrm{Top}_*$  it holds that  $\mathrm{Hom}_{\mathrm{Top}_*}(A \wedge B, C) \cong \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathrm{Top}_*}(A, \mathrm{Map}_*(B, C))$  and hence  $\mathrm{Hom}_{\mathrm{Top}_*}(- \wedge S^1, -) \cong \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathrm{Top}_*}(-, \mathrm{Map}_*(S^1, -))$

**Definition B.0.6** ( $(\Omega)$ -Spectrum<sup>4</sup>). A spectrum is a collection of pointed spaces  $\{E_n\}_{n \in \mathbb{Z}}$  with equivalences  $\delta_n : E_n \simeq \Omega E_{n+1}$

<sup>4</sup>It is denoted  $\Omega$ -spectrum in the older literature, e.g. books or articles by May or Adams like [ADA78].

*Remark.* Note that via the adjunction  $\Sigma \dashv \Omega$  we can get a prespectrum from a spectrum: given  $X_i, X_{i+1} \in \mathcal{S}_*$  it holds that  $\text{Hom}_{\mathcal{S}_*}(X_i, \Omega X_{i+1}) \simeq \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{S}_*}(\Sigma X_i, X_{i+1})$  and thus we can get the pointed maps we need in order to define a prespectrum. This means that every spectrum is a prespectrum, i.e. the category of spectra is a subcategory of the category of prespectra. This is the reason why the synonym of prespectra 'sequential spectra' is counterintuitive.

**Definition B.0.7** ( $\infty$ -category of spectra). The  $\infty$ -category of spectra is the category where the objects are spectra.

This is equivalent to saying that the category of spectra is the sequential homotopy limit

$$\lim(\dots \leftarrow \mathcal{S}_* \leftarrow \mathcal{S}_* \leftarrow \mathcal{S}_* \leftarrow \dots)$$

where we can see the diagram we are taking the limit over as a functor  $D : \mathbb{Z}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \infty\text{-Cat}$  where  $\mathbb{Z}$  is considered as a category via its ordering ( $\leq$  corresponds to a morphism  $\rightarrow$ ) and for each  $i \in \mathbb{Z}$   $D(i) = \mathcal{S}_*$ .

From this it follows that a map of spectra  $f : \{X_i\}_{i \in \mathbb{Z}} \rightarrow \{Y_i\}_{i \in \mathbb{Z}}$  is given by components that are pointed maps  $f_i : X_i \rightarrow Y_i$  such that the following square commutes homotopy coherently

$$\begin{array}{ccc} X_i & \xrightarrow{f_i} & Y_i \\ \simeq \Big| & & \Big| \simeq \\ \Omega X_{i+1} & \xrightarrow{\Omega f_{i+1}} & \Omega Y_{i+1} \end{array}$$

The initial object of the  $\infty$ -category of spectra is the sphere spectrum  $\mathbb{S}$ .

**Notation.** An  $n$ -connective space is a space with trivial homotopy groups for all  $k < n$ . An  $n$ -connective space is an  $n - 1$ -connected space. A space is 0-connective if and only if it is non-empty.

**Definition B.0.8** (Infinite loop space). An infinite loop space is a non-empty pointed space  $X_0$  with an infinite sequence of pointed spaces  $X_0, X_1, X_2, \dots$  with weak equivalences for  $n \geq 0$

$$X_n \simeq \Omega X_{n+1}$$

Infinite loop spaces seem very similar to what we defined as spectra ( $\Omega$ -spectra). In fact, we will soon see that infinite loop spaces coincide with a particular kind of spectra: connective spectra.

**Definition B.0.9** (Underlying (infinite loop) space functor). Given a spectrum, the assignment of a spectrum  $\{X_i\}_{i \in \mathbb{Z}}$  to its underlying infinite loop space, aka 0-th space, is a functor.

$$\begin{aligned} \Omega^\infty : \text{Sp} &\rightarrow \mathcal{S}_* \\ \{X_i\}_{i \in \mathbb{Z}} &\mapsto X_0 \end{aligned}$$

Such assignment has a left adjoint.

**Definition B.0.10** (Suspension spectrum functor).

$$\Sigma^\infty : \mathcal{S}_* \rightarrow \text{Sp}$$

$$X \mapsto \{\Sigma^i X\}_i$$

sending pointed spaces to suspension spectra, i.e. sequences of spaces  $\{\Sigma^i X\}_i$  with pointed maps  $\Sigma(\Sigma^i X) = \Sigma^{i+1} X$ . Such suspension spectra are indeed spectra (as we defined them (aka  $\Omega$ -spectra)) thanks to the adjunction  $\Sigma \dashv \Omega$ .

An example of such spectra is the sphere spectrum we already encountered in 3.4.1.

**Theorem B.0.11** (Recognition theorem for  $n$ -iterated loop spaces, Boardman-Vogt, May). *For any  $n > 0$ ,  $n$ -iterated loop spaces coincide with grouplike  $\mathbb{E}_n$ -spaces. More rigorously: the  $n$ -iterated loop space functor  $\Omega^n : \mathcal{S}_* \rightarrow \mathcal{S}_*$  restricts to an equivalence of  $\infty$ -categories between  $n$ -connective pointed spaces and grouplike  $\mathbb{E}_n$ -spaces*

$$\Omega^n : \mathcal{S}_*^{\geq n} \simeq \text{Alg}_{\mathbb{E}_n}^{\text{gp}}(\mathcal{S})$$

See [Jac17, 5.2.6.10] for a rigorous proof. Note anyway that it follows from an easier fact to prove (see [Den20, Theorem 3.9]):

**Theorem B.0.12** (Recognition theorem for loop spaces). *Loop spaces coincide with grouplike  $\mathbb{E}_1$ -spaces. More rigorously: the loop space functor  $\Omega : \mathcal{S}_* \rightarrow \mathcal{S}_*$  restricts to an equivalence of  $\infty$ -categories between 0-connective pointed spaces and grouplike  $\mathbb{E}_1$ -spaces*

$$\mathcal{S}_*^{\geq 0} \simeq \text{Alg}_{\mathbb{E}_1}^{\text{gp}}(\mathcal{S})$$

Combining this with the Dunn additivity theorem (4.8.24) allows to prove the recognition theorem for  $n$ -iterated loop spaces by induction. The base case:  $n = 1$  is the recognition theorem for loop spaces and the inductive step holds via the Dunn additivity theorem.

As said in the preamble of this section, stable homotopy groups of a space  $A \in \mathcal{S}$ , denoted  $\pi_i^{\mathcal{S}}(A)$ , are exactly the homotopy groups of the spectrum of  $A$ ,  $\Sigma^\infty A$ . Thus,  $\pi_i^{\mathcal{S}}(A) \cong \pi_i(\Sigma^\infty A)$ . There is however a natural question: what are the homotopy groups of a spectrum? One interesting fact is that while the degree homotopy groups for usual topological spaces are defined to be positive, homotopy groups of spectra can be defined and be non-trivial also for negative degrees.

**Definition B.0.13** (Homotopy groups of spectra). Given a prespectrum  $\{E_i\}_{i \in \mathbb{Z}}$  with pointed maps  $\sigma_i : \Sigma E_i \rightarrow E_{i+1}$ , for  $n, k \in \mathbb{Z}$ , the  $n$ th homotopy group of  $\{E_i\}_{i \in \mathbb{Z}}$  is

$$\pi_n(\{E_i\}_{i \in \mathbb{Z}}) := \varinjlim (\dots \rightarrow \pi_{n+k}(E_k) \xrightarrow{\Sigma} \pi_{n+k+1}(\Sigma E_k) \xrightarrow{\pi_{n+k+1}(\sigma_k)} \pi_{n+k+1}(E_{k+1}) \rightarrow \dots)$$

where all the  $\pi_*$  inside the parentheses indicate the homotopy groups of the various pointed spaces  $E_k \in \{E_i\}_{i \in \mathbb{Z}}$ . Since  $k \in \mathbb{Z}$ , there are indeed also homotopy groups with negative degrees.

If a prespectrum  $\{X_i\}_{i \in \mathbb{Z}}$  is also a spectrum, then from the definition we just provided it follows that for

$$\pi_n(\{X_i\}_{i \in \mathbb{Z}}) \begin{cases} \pi_{n+k}(X_k) & k+n \geq 0 \\ \pi_n(X_0) & n \geq 0 \\ \pi_0 X_{|n|} & n < 0 \end{cases}$$

**Definition B.0.14** (Connective spectra). Connective spectra are spectra that only have positive non-trivial homotopy groups: let  $\{X_i\}_{i \in \mathbb{Z}}$  be a connective spectra, then for all  $n < 0$  it holds that  $\pi_n(\{X_i\}_{i \in \mathbb{Z}}) = 0$ .

Connective spectra form a subcategory of  $\text{Sp}$  denoted  $\text{Sp}_{\geq 0}$ .

**Example B.0.15.** Many of the spectra one uses are connective:

- suspension spectra, and thus remarkably the sphere spectrum  $\mathbb{S}$
- the Thom spectrum  $\text{MO}$

*Remark* (Connective spectra=infinite loop spaces). An infinite loop space is a 0-connective pointed space (since it is non-empty), hence it does not have any negative homotopy groups and it has exactly the same structure  $X_n \simeq \Omega X_{n+1}$  as a spectrum.

Thus, infinite loop spaces coincide with connective spectra.

*Remark* (Grouplike  $\mathbb{E}_\infty$ -spaces=Picard groupoids). Recall (4.8.1) that grouplike  $\mathbb{E}_\infty$ -spaces coincide with Picard  $\infty$ -groupoids:

- the  $\mathbb{E}_\infty$  makes them homotopy coherent commutative monoid objects in  $\text{Grpd}_\infty$ , i.e. symmetric monoidal  $\infty$ -groupoids
- since they are grouplike, they have inverses because if we first apply  $\pi_0$ , then forget about the commutative structure, and land in the category of groups, that means that the inverses must have been there from the start

The following result proves that all grouplike  $\mathbb{E}_\infty$ -spaces (aka Picard  $\infty$ -groupoids) are connective spectra (aka infinite loop spaces). Hence, we will be able to conclude that Picard  $\infty$ -groupoids coincide with infinite loop spaces. However, what is really important for us is that Picard groupoids coincide with connective spectra since this is the fact that will allow us to recognize that invertible field theories are maps of spectra.

Roughly, passing to the limit  $n \rightarrow \infty$  in the recognition theorem for  $n$ -iterated loop spaces with some abstract nonsense regarding the definition of the category of spectra as the sequential homotopy limit  $\lim(\dots \leftarrow \mathcal{S}_* \leftarrow \mathcal{S}_* \leftarrow \mathcal{S}_* \leftarrow \dots)$  leads to the following result.

**Theorem B.0.16** (Recognition theorem for connective spectra/infinite loop spaces). *Connective spectra coincide with grouplike  $\mathbb{E}_\infty$ -spaces.*

*There is an equivalence:*

$$\mathbf{B}^\infty : \text{Alg}_{\mathbb{E}_\infty}^{\text{gp}}(\mathcal{S}) \xleftrightarrow{\sim} \text{Sp}_{\geq 0} : \Omega^\infty$$

where  $\mathbf{B}^\infty$  denotes the classifying spectrum functor.

See [Lur08, 7.2.2.11], [HW, Corollary II.24] or [Den20, 3.29] for proofs.

We can conclude this fast-paced introduction to spectra with the following slogan:

**infinite loop spaces=connective spectra=Picard  $\infty$ -groupoids=grouplike  $\mathbb{E}_\infty$ -spaces**

## B.1 Spectra and higher algebra

In sum, spectra are a higher categorical analog of abelian groups (see 4.6.20), they have been in fact called “the abelian groups of the 21st century” [MG24] because they provide very powerful techniques for many areas of mathematics where there is currently much progress, e.g. in algebraic K-theory. One can do algebra with spectra as one does ordinary

algebra with abelian groups and rings, this subject is usually called 'higher algebra'<sup>5</sup>. This is not just a vague analogy, but something that can be motivated formally, for instance, abelian groups are discrete spectra:

$$\pi_0 : \mathrm{Sp} \rightarrow \mathrm{Ab}$$

where in particular  $\pi_0(\mathbb{S}) = \mathbb{Z}$

We make the comparison clearer via the following table<sup>6</sup>:

algebra	higher algebra
set	$\infty$ -groupoid
abelian group	spectrum
Ab	Sp
$\mathbb{Z}$	$\mathbb{S}$
ring	$\mathbb{E}_1$ -ring spectrum
commutative ring	$\mathbb{E}_\infty$ -ring spectrum
Ab-enriched category	Sp-enriched category
abelian category	stable category

See 4.6.20 and 4.6.23 for the definitions of Ab-enriched category and abelian category. See 4.8.1 for the definitions of  $\mathbb{E}_1$ -ring spectrum and of  $\mathbb{E}_\infty$ -ring spectrum. A stable category is a pointed  $\infty$ -category with finite limits and colimits where  $\Sigma \dashv \Omega$  do not just form an adjunction, but are equivalent. There is an equivalent definition of stable category that more closely resembles the definition of abelian category, i.e. an additive  $\infty$ -category with further conditions, see [Jac17, Section 1].

<sup>5</sup>A funny synonym for higher algebra is brave new algebra, referring to Huxley's dystopian novel *Brave New World*. It was coined by Waldhausen, one of the pioneers of this discipline, hinting at the fact that it seems to have myriads of intriguing opportunities but at the same could lead into a world of pure abstractions detached from mathematics with actual content. Examples of successful applications of such machinery to concrete problems, e.g. the counterexamples to Ravenel's telescope conjecture [BHLS23], convince the author of this section that this nightmare was avoided, although it must be said that they are clearly biased.

<sup>6</sup>his table was inspired by a table in Thomas Nikolaus' talk: <https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=SJNKs1PxT9g>.

## **Part III**

# **Hints and solutions to exercises**

## Sheet 1.

### Exercise B.1.1. *Abelian structure of the cobordism group*

Show that the disjoint union induces an abelian group structure on the cobordism group  $\Omega_n$ .

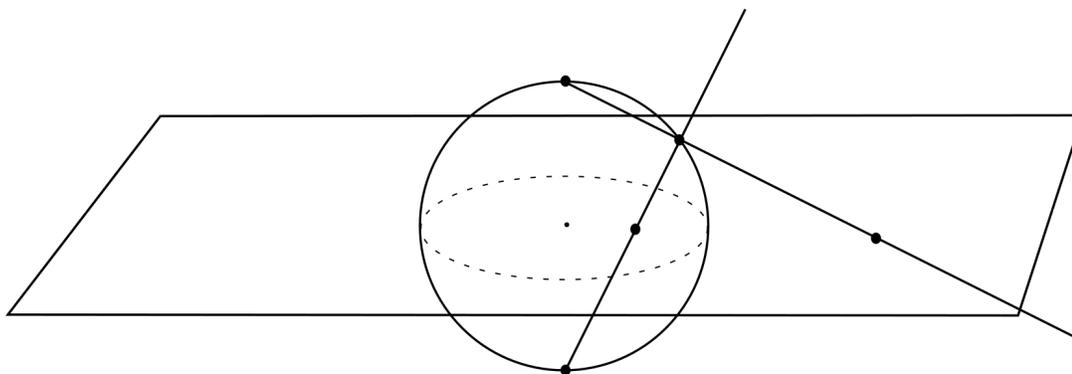
First we note that, under the disjoint union, each element of  $\Omega_n$  is its own inverse, i.e.  $a \sqcup a = \emptyset$ . Using multiplicative notation (since we prefer not to use the standard additive notation before we know we are dealing with an abelian group) we have  $ab = ab(ba)(ba) = a(bb)aba = (aa)ba = ba$  using associativity, hence proving that the group structure is abelian.

### Exercise B.1.2. *Orientable Manifolds*

- Show that the circle  $S^1$  is an orientable manifold.
- Show that the sphere  $S^2$  is an orientable manifold.
- Show that the total space of the tangent bundle of a smooth  $n$ -manifold is an orientable manifold.

A way of proving a manifold is orientable is finding a local trivialisation of the tangent bundle. To do this we first pick an open cover and then prove that the transition functions are orientation preserving (we understand what orientation means in Euclidean space).

- For  $S^1$  we can use an open cover inspired by the universal cover. We choose  $U_1 = (-\pi, \pi)$  and  $U_2 = (0, 2\pi)$  along with the maps  $\varphi_1 : x \mapsto e^{ix}$  and  $\varphi_2 : x \mapsto e^{ix}$ , respectively. Looking at the transition map  $\varphi_1^{-1} \circ \varphi_2$  we get a map between  $(0, \pi) \cup (\pi, 2\pi) \rightarrow (0, \pi) \cup (-\pi, 0)$  acting like the identity on the first constituent interval and like the identity plus  $2\pi$  on the second one. By symmetry, we have a similar situation for the other transition function. Therefore, the differential acts by the identity on the tangent spaces, and so this has determinant  $1 > 0$ . Thus we conclude that  $S^1$  is orientable, as required.
- Attempt 1:** We try doing this using the standard stereographic projections from the north and south poles, respectively, as an atlas. Then, it is well known that the (both!) transition maps are simply circle inversions on  $\mathbb{R}^2 \setminus \{0\}$ . See the picture below for clarification (this is a simple exercise in standard Euclidean geometry).



In other words, the map is given by  $(x, y) \mapsto (\frac{x}{x^2+y^2}, \frac{y}{x^2+y^2})$ . If we do the computations, we find that the Jacobian is

$$J = \frac{1}{(x^2 + y^2)^4} \det \begin{pmatrix} y^2 - x^2 & -2yx \\ -2yx & x^2 - y^2 \end{pmatrix} = -\frac{1}{(x^2 + y^2)^2} < 0$$

so this approach doesn't work...

**Attempt 2:**  $S^2$  can be viewed as the level set of a smooth function  $f : (x, y, z) \mapsto x^2 + y^2 + z^2$  with non-zero gradient and is therefore an orientable manifold.

**Attempt 3:** For those of you that would (for good reasons) argue that attempt 2 is somehow cheating because it doesn't use our definition, but rather a theorem we haven't presented, we will now present a proof using first principles. This will use a similar idea as in exercise (a). If we describe the sphere as the set of points  $\{(\sin \phi \sin \theta, \sin \phi \cos \theta, \cos \phi) \in \mathbb{R}^3\}$ . Let  $(U_1, \varphi_1)$  be the chart where...

- (c) Show that the total space of the tangent bundle of a smooth  $n$ -manifold is an orientable manifold.

### Exercise B.1.3. Computation of $\Omega_0^{or}$

Compute the oriented bordism group  $\Omega_0^{or}$ .

We have that 0-dimensional oriented manifolds are classified by a finite collection of points, each with sign. By connecting points of different signs with oriented lines we get a cobordism to a finite collection of points all of the same sign. The sum of the signs in this sense is quite obviously invariant under cobordisms, and so we realise that  $\Omega_0^{or} \cong \mathbb{Z}$ .

### Exercise B.1.4. Computation of $\Omega_2^{or}$

- (a) Work through the argument in detail showing that  $\Sigma_g$  is cobordant to the empty set.
- (b) Recall that the disjoint union is cobordant to the connected sum. Work through the details for an example different from what was shown in the lecture.
- (c) Conclude that  $\Omega_2^{or} = 0$ . (Here, you may omit details about the orientations of the 3-dimensional cobordisms.)

Let us now try to understand this cobordism group in dimension 2 a bit better.

- (a) To understand that  $\Sigma_g$  is cobordant to the empty set we will use the "standard" embedding in  $\mathbb{R}^3$ . The manifold with boundary that is the interior of this surface in  $\mathbb{R}^3$  forms a cobordism between  $\Sigma_g$  and  $\emptyset$ .
- (b) Push along the normal bundle...
- (c) This follows from classification of surfaces...

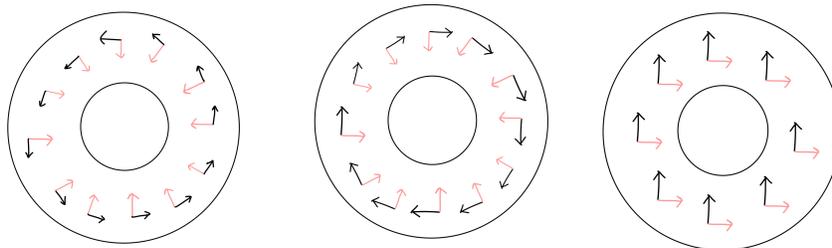
**Exercise B.1.5. Computation of  $\Omega_2^{\text{unor}}$ :**

- (a) Show that the Klein bottle  $K$  is cobordant to the empty set.
- (b) (Poincaré duality and Euler characteristic) Show that  $\mathbb{R}P^2$  is non-zero in  $\Omega_2^{\text{unor}}$ , i.e. that there is no compact 3-manifold  $X$  with boundary  $\partial X = \mathbb{R}P^2$ .  
*Hint:* Consider the double  $D = X \cup_{\mathbb{R}P^2} X$ . What does Poincaré duality imply about the Euler characteristic of 3-dimensional closed manifolds?
- (c) Conclude from the above that  $\Omega_2^{\text{unor}} = \mathbb{Z}/2\mathbb{Z}$ .

**Sheet 2.****Exercise B.1.6. Framings**

Justify your answers to the following questions:

- (a) Can a Klein bottle be framed?
- (b) Can  $S^2$  be framed?
- (c) An **isotopy between the framings** is a deformation given by a family of framings parameterized by the interval. Are any of the framed cylinders below isotopic?
- (d) Which of the framings induce the same orientations?



- (a) A Klein bottle cannot be framed because it is unoriented (existence of a framing is more restrictive).
- (b)  $S^2$  can also not be framed even though it is orientable. This is a consequence of the hairy ball theorem.
- (c) An **isotopy between the framings** is a deformation given by a family of framings parameterized by the interval. Are any of the framed cylinders below isotopic? ...
- (d) The two rightmost framings induce the same orientations.

**Exercise B.1.7. Attaching handles**

**Definition.** Let  $B^n$  denote the  $n$ -dimensional ball as a manifold with boundary and  $S^n$  the  $n$ -dimensional sphere.

Given a 2-dimensional manifold  $M$ , we *attach a  $j$ -handle*  $H^j := B^j \times B^{2-j}$ , for  $j \in \{0, 1, 2\}$  via and a smooth embedding  $f : S^{j-1} \times D^{2-j} \hookrightarrow \partial M$  as follows:

$$M \cup_f H^j := (M \sqcup (B^j \times B^{2-j})) / \sim$$

where for  $(p, x) \in S^{j-1} \times B^{2-j} \subset B^j \times B^{2-j}$ , we set  $f(p, x) \sim (p, x)$ .

- (a) Convince yourself that there is a smooth structure on  $M \cup_f H^J$ .
  - (b) Which surface is obtained from attaching a 1-handle to a disk?
  - (c) Which surface is obtained from attaching two 1-handles to a disk, i.e. from attaching an additional 1-handle to the surface obtained in part (a)?
  - (d) Build the torus by successively attaching handles to a disk.
- (a) "I can explain it to you, but I can't understand it for you."
  - (b) A cylinder (or a Moebius strip).
  - (c) A so-called pair of pants.
  - (d) To a disk we successively add a 1-handle, another 1-handle, and finally cap everything off with a 2-handle.

**Exercise B.1.8. Properties of the connected sum of manifolds**

- (a) Given  $n$ -manifolds  $M$ ,  $M'$ , and  $M''$ , show that the connected sum satisfies the following properties.
  - (i)  $M \# S^n \cong M$ , *(neutral element)*
  - (ii)  $M \# M' \cong M' \# M$ , and *(commutativity)*
  - (iii)  $(M \# M') \# M'' \cong M \# (M' \# M'')$ . *(associativity)*
- (b) If  $M$  and  $M'$  are smooth  $n$ -manifolds, construct a smooth structure on the connected sum  $M \# M'$ . Note that this is not unique but defines a well-defined diffeomorphism class. You may like to read more details using isotopies in Chapter 8, Section 2 in Hirsch, Differential Topology<sup>7</sup>.

**Exercise B.1.9. Reading exercise**

Below is a list of several proofs of the classification theorem of 1-dimensional manifolds using different tools. Read through one (or several) of them, or find your own.

- (i) <https://pnp.mathematik.uni-stuttgart.de/igt/eiserm/lehre/2014/Topologie/Gale%20-%201-manifolds.pdf>
- (ii) Appendix of <https://www.maths.ed.ac.uk/~v1ranick/papers/milnortop.pdf>, starting at p.55.

---

<sup>7</sup>Can e.g. be accessed at [https://www.researchgate.net/publication/268035774\\_Differential\\_Topology](https://www.researchgate.net/publication/268035774_Differential_Topology).

### Sheet 3.

#### Exercise B.1.10. Morse functions

- (a) Consider the function  $f : \mathbb{R}^2 \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  given by  $(x, y) \mapsto x^3 - 3xy^2$ . Find all the critical points and check if  $f$  is a Morse function. If it does not meet the criteria, perturb it in such a way that it becomes a Morse function.
- (b) Consider the function  $f : \mathbb{R}^2 \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  defined by  $(x, y) \mapsto x^2y^2$ . Find all the critical points and check if  $f$  is a Morse function. If it does not meet the criteria, perturb it in such a way that it becomes a Morse function.
- (c) Show that if  $f : M \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  and  $g : N \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  are Morse functions, then  $f + g : M \times N \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  is also a Morse function, and the critical points are pairs of critical points of  $f$  and  $g$ . Visualize this for  $M = N = S^1$  and  $f : S^1 \subset \mathbb{R}^2 \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  the projection onto the first coordinate.
- (a) We have that  $\text{grad } f = (3x^2 - 3y^2, -6xy)$ , and so the only critical point is the origin. The Hessian determinant is

$$\mathcal{H} = \det \begin{pmatrix} 6x & -6y \\ -6y & -6x \end{pmatrix}$$

and hence degenerate at the origin. This means  $f$  is not Morse. We can perturb it by adding  $\varepsilon(x^2 + y^2)$  for a sufficiently small  $\varepsilon > 0$  such that it becomes Morse. This has the origin as its only critical point and adds  $2\varepsilon I_2$  to the Hessian matrix, thus making the determinant not vanish at the origin.

- (b) By, again, computing the gradient  $\text{grad } f = (2xy^2, 2yx^2)$ , we realise that the set of critical points of  $f$  consists precisely of the  $x$ - and  $y$ -axis. Therefore,  $f$  is obviously not Morse.
- (c) Show that if  $f : M \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  and  $g : N \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  are Morse functions, then  $f + g : M \times N \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  is also a Morse function, and the critical points are pairs of critical points of  $f$  and  $g$ . Visualize this for  $M = N = S^1$  and  $f : S^1 \subset \mathbb{R}^2 \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  the projection onto the first coordinate.

#### Exercise B.1.11. Handle decomposition

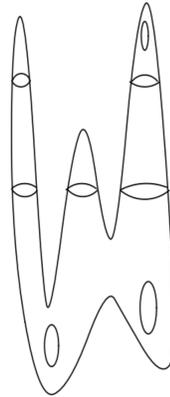
**Definition 1.** Let  $M$  be a compact 2-manifold. A **handle decomposition** of  $M$  is a finite sequence of manifolds

$$\emptyset = W_{-1} \subseteq W_0 \subseteq W_1 \subseteq W_2 = M$$

such that each  $W_i$  is obtained from  $W_{i-1}$  by attaching  $i$ -handles.

- (a) Find two different handle decompositions of  $S^2$ .
- (b) Find a handle decomposition of  $\mathbb{R}P^2$ .
- (c) Find a handle decomposition of the Klein bottle.
- (d) Explain why, for any non-empty closed connected surface, we can start a handle decomposition with a single 0-handle. *Hint:* The key argument was mentioned in lectures as “*handle cancellation*”.

- (e) Using the idea of handle cancellation, bring the surface below into *normal form*, i.e. such that read from bottom to top, the index of the critical points are non-decreasing.



**Exercise B.1.12. Reading exercise - Classification of closed 1-manifolds**

Prove the following theorem using Morse theory and/or read through the proof in <https://www.math.csi.cuny.edu/~abhijit/papers/classification.pdf> [Theorem 15].

**Theorem B.1.13.** Any closed 1-manifold is homeomorphic to  $S^1$ .

# Bibliography

- [ADA78] J. F. ADAMS. *Infinite Loop Spaces (AM-90): Hermann Weyl Lectures, The Institute for Advanced Study. (AM-90)*. Princeton University Press, 1978.
- [AF15] David Ayala and John Francis. Factorization homology of topological manifolds. *Journal of Topology*, 8(4):1045–1084, October 2015.
- [AF17] David Ayala and John Francis. The cobordism hypothesis, 2017.
- [AF19] David Ayala and John Francis. A factorization homology primer, 2019.
- [AFR20] David Ayala, John Francis, and Nick Rozenblyum. Factorization homology i: higher categories, 2020.
- [ART50] EMIL ARTIN. The theory of braids. *American Scientist*, 38(1):112–119, 1950.
- [Bae04] John C. Baez. Quantum quandaries: a category-theoretic perspective, 2004.
- [BD95] John C. Baez and James Dolan. Higher-dimensional algebra and topological quantum field theory. *Journal of Mathematical Physics*, 36(11):6073–6105, November 1995.
- [Ber06] Julia E. Bergner. A survey of  $(\infty, 1)$ -categories, 2006.
- [BHLS23] Robert Burklund, Jeremy Hahn, Ishan Levy, and Tomer M. Schlank.  $k$ -theoretic counterexamples to ravenel’s telescope conjecture, 2023.
- [CG23] Kevin Costello and Owen Gwilliam. Factorization algebra, 2023.
- [Cos06] Kevin J. Costello. Topological conformal field theories and calabi-yau categories, 2006.
- [CR18] Nils Carqueville and Ingo Runkel. Introductory lectures on topological quantum field theory. *Banach Center Publications*, 114:9–47, 2018.
- [CS19] Damien Calaque and Claudia Scheimbauer. A note on the  $(\infty, n)$ -category of cobordisms. *Algebraic & Geometric Topology*, 19(2):533–655, March 2019.
- [Dav23] David Ben-Zvi, Yiannis Sakellaridis, Akshay Venkatesh. Relative langlands duality. <https://www.math.ias.edu/~akshay/research/BZSVpaperV1.pdf>, (Work in progress) 2023.
- [DBZ21] (notes by Jackson Van Dyke) David Ben-Zvi. Between electric-magnetic duality and the Langlands program. [https://web.ma.utexas.edu/users/vandyke/notes/langlands\\_sp21/langlands.pdf](https://web.ma.utexas.edu/users/vandyke/notes/langlands_sp21/langlands.pdf), 2021.

- [Den20] Denis Nardin. Introduction to stable homotopy theory. <https://homepages.uni-regensburg.de/~nad22969/stable-homotopy-2020/stable-homotopy.pdf>, 2020.
- [FH21] Daniel S Freed and Michael J Hopkins. Reflection positivity and invertible topological phases. *Geometry & Topology*, 25(3):1165–1330, May 2021.
- [FM13] Daniel S. Freed and Gregory W. Moore. Twisted equivariant matter. *Annales Henri Poincaré*, 14(8):1927–2023, March 2013.
- [FR19] Christopher J. Fewster and Kasia Rejzner. Algebraic quantum field theory – an introduction, 2019.
- [Fre94] Daniel S. Freed. Higher algebraic structures and quantization. *Communications in Mathematical Physics*, 159(2):343–398, January 1994.
- [Fre08] Daniel S. Freed. Remarks on chern-simons theory, 2008.
- [Fre12] Daniel S. Freed. The cobordism hypothesis, 2012.
- [Fre13] Daniel S. Freed. Bordism: Old and new, 2013.
- [Fre14] Daniel S. Freed. Short-range entanglement and invertible field theories, 2014.
- [GO13] Nick Gurski and Angélica M. Osorno. Infinite loop spaces, and coherence for symmetric monoidal bicategories. *Advances in Mathematics*, 246:1–32, October 2013.
- [GP22] Daniel Grady and Dmitri Pavlov. The geometric cobordism hypothesis, 2022.
- [Gro15] Moritz Groth. A short course on  $\infty$ -categories, 2015.
- [Gro21] Alexander Grothendieck. Pursuing stacks, 2021.
- [GS18] Owen Gwilliam and Claudia Scheimbauer. Duals and adjoints in higher morita categories, 2018.
- [Har19] Yonatan Harpaz. Little cube algebras and factorization homology (course notes, in progress), 2019.
- [Hir76] Morris W. Hirsch. *Differential Topology*, pages 1–6. Springer New York, New York, NY, 1976.
- [HK64] Rudolf Haag and Daniel Kastler. An Algebraic approach to quantum field theory. *J. Math. Phys.*, 5:848–861, 1964.
- [HM06] Hans Halvorson and Michael Mueger. Algebraic quantum field theory, 2006.
- [HW] Fabian Hebestreit and Ferdinand Wagner. Lecture notes for algebraic and hermitian k-theory. <https://florianadler.github.io/AlgebraBonn/KTheory.pdf>.
- [Jac09] Jacob Lurie.  $(\infty, 2)$ -categories and the goodwillie calculus i. <https://www.math.ias.edu/~lurie/papers/GoodwillieI.pdf>, 2009.

- [Jac17] Jacob Lurie. Higher algebra. <https://www.math.ias.edu/~lurie/papers/HA.pdf>, 2017.
- [Jor21] D. Jordan. Topological Field Theories, Lecture Notes of the Working Seminar at The Hodge Institute. [https://www.maths.ed.ac.uk/~djordan/lecture\\_notes\\_tft\\_seminar.pdf](https://www.maths.ed.ac.uk/~djordan/lecture_notes_tft_seminar.pdf), 2021.
- [Kap95] M. M. Kapranov. *Analogies between the Langlands Correspondence and Topological Quantum Field Theory*, pages 119–151. Birkhäuser Boston, Boston, MA, 1995.
- [Kim16] Minhyong Kim. Arithmetic chern-simons theory i, 2016.
- [KLF09] Alexei Kitaev, Vladimir Lebedev, and Mikhail Feigel'man. Periodic table for topological insulators and superconductors. In *AIP Conference Proceedings*. AIP, 2009.
- [Koc03] Joachim Kock. *Frobenius Algebras and 2-D Topological Quantum Field Theories*. London Mathematical Society Student Texts. Cambridge University Press, 2003.
- [Kos13] A.A. Kosinski. *Differential Manifolds*. Dover Books on Mathematics. Dover Publications, 2013.
- [KRT97] Christian Kassel, Marc Rosso, and Vladimir Turaev. Quantum groups and knot invariants. *HAL*, 1997(0), 1997.
- [KW07] Anton Kapustin and Edward Witten. Electric-magnetic duality and the geometric langlands program, 2007.
- [Lan71] Saunders Mac Lane. *Categories for the Working Mathematician*. Springer New York, New York, NY, 1971.
- [Lan21] M. Land. *Introduction to Infinity-Categories*. Compact Textbooks in Mathematics. Springer International Publishing, 2021.
- [Lee12] John M. Lee. *Smooth Manifolds*. Springer New York, New York, NY, 2012.
- [Liu02] Q. Liu. *Algebraic Geometry and Arithmetic Curves*. Oxford graduate texts in mathematics. Oxford University Press, 2002.
- [LP08] Aaron D. Lauda and Hendryk Pfeiffer. Open–closed strings: Two-dimensional extended tqfts and frobenius algebras. *Topology and its Applications*, 155(7):623–666, March 2008.
- [Luk20] Luke Trujillo. A coherent proof of mac lane’s coherence theorem. [https://scholarship.claremont.edu/hmc\\_theses/243/](https://scholarship.claremont.edu/hmc_theses/243/), 2020.
- [Lur08] Jacob Lurie. Higher topos theory, 2008.
- [Lur09] Jacob Lurie. On the classification of topological field theories, 2009.
- [Max21] Maxine E. Calle. A bit about infinite loop spaces. [https://bpb-us-w2.wpmucdn.com/web.sas.upenn.edu/dist/0/713/files/2022/07/Infinite\\_Loop\\_Spaces.pdf](https://bpb-us-w2.wpmucdn.com/web.sas.upenn.edu/dist/0/713/files/2022/07/Infinite_Loop_Spaces.pdf), 2021.

- [Maz73] Barry Mazur. Notes on étale cohomology of number fields. *Annales Scientifiques De L'Ecole Normale Supérieure*, 6:521–552, 1973.
- [MF88] Atiyah Michael F. Topological quantum field theory. *Publication Mathématiques de l'I.H.É.S.*, 1988.
- [MG24] Aaron Mazel-Gee. *Higher Algebra: Chapter 0*. Cambridge University Press, 2024?
- [Mor11] Jack Morava. The cosmic galois group as koszul dual to waldhausen's  $a(pt)$ , 2011.
- [MRR23] Lyne Moser, Nima Rasekh, and Martina Rovelli.  $(\infty, n)$ -limits i: Definition and first consistency results, 2023.
- [MS05] John W. Milnor and James D. Stasheff. *Characteristic classes*. Texts Read. Math. New Delhi: Hindustan Book Agency, 2005.
- [Mul97] F.A. Muller. The equivalence myth of quantum mechanics —part i. *Studies in History and Philosophy of Science Part B: Studies in History and Philosophy of Modern Physics*, 28(1):35–61, 1997.
- [MW97] J.W. Milnor and D.W. Weaver. *Topology from the Differentiable Viewpoint*. Princeton Landmarks in Mathematics and Physics. Princeton University Press, 1997.
- [Mü20] Lukas Müller. Extended functorial field theories and anomalies in quantum field theories, 2020.
- [Rez21] Charles Rezk. Introduction to quasicategories, 2021.
- [Rie17] E. Riehl. *Category theory in context*. Aurora: Dover modern math originals. Dover Publications, 2017.
- [Rok19] Rok Gregoric. Spectra are your friends. <https://web.ma.utexas.edu/users/gregoric/Spectra%20Are%20Your%20Friends.pdf>, 2019.
- [Run] Ingo Runkel. Algebra in braided tensor categories and conformal field theory. <https://www.math.uni-hamburg.de/home/runkel/PDF/alg.pdf>.
- [Sch14] Claudia Isabella Scheimbauer. *Factorization Homology as a Fully Extended Topological Field Theory*. PhD thesis, Zurich, ETH, 2014.
- [Sch23] Christoph Schweigert. Hopf algebras, quantum groups and topological field theory. <https://www.math.uni-hamburg.de/home/schweigert/skripten/hskript.pdf>, 2023.
- [Shu08] Michael A. Shulman. Set theory for category theory, 2008.
- [Shu10] Michael A. Shulman. Constructing symmetric monoidal bicategories, 2010.
- [SP14] Christopher J. Schommer-Pries. The classification of two-dimensional extended topological field theories, 2014.
- [Str22] Catharina Stroppel. Categorification: tangle invariants and tqfts, 2022.

- [Tan20] Hiro Lee Tanaka. *Lectures on Factorization Homology,  $(\infty, n)$ -Categories, and Topological Field Theories*. Springer International Publishing, 2020.
- [Tan22] (Notes written by Peter Haine) Tanaka, Hiro Lee. Viva fukaya!, January 2022.
- [Tin15] Peter Tingley. A minus sign that used to annoy me but now i know why it is there, 2015.
- [TS04] Peter Teichner and Stephan Stolz. What is an elliptic object? *Topology, geometry and quantum field theory, 247-343 (2004)*, 308, 06 2004.
- [Tur] Vladimir G. Turaev. Modular categories and 3-manifold invariants. *International Journal of Modern Physics B; (United States)*, 6.
- [Tur16] Vladimir G. Turaev. *Quantum Invariants of Knots and 3-Manifolds*. De Gruyter, Berlin, Boston, 2016.
- [Wei94] C.A. Weibel. *An Introduction to Homological Algebra*. Cambridge Studies in Advanced Mathematics. Cambridge University Press, 1994.
- [Wit89] Edward Witten. Quantum field theory and the jones polynomial. *Communications in Mathematical Physics*, 121(3):351–399, Sep 1989.
- [Wit91] Edward Witten. Introduction to cohomological field theories. *Int. J. Mod. Phys. A*, 6:2775–2792, 1991.